

# Introduction

Thank you for purchasing SoftBank 840SH.

- For proper handset use, read this guide beforehand.
- Accessible SoftBank Mobile services may vary by service area, subscription, etc.

SoftBank 840SH is compatible with 3G network technology.

## Notes

- Copying this guide in whole or part without authorization is prohibited.
- Guide content is subject to change without prior notice.
- Efforts have been made to ensure the accuracy and clarity of this guide. Please contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (**P.14-36**) about unclear or missing information.

# Chapter Contents At A Glance

Getting Started	1
Universal Operations, Etc.	2
Calling	3
Messaging	4
Internet	5
Camera & Imaging	6
Media Player & S! Applications	7
Handy Extras	8
Entertainment	9
Handset Security	10
Data Folder & Memory Card	11
Connectivity & File Backup	12
Handset Customization	13
Appendix	14



## Notes

- Most operation descriptions are based on default settings with handset open (**P.1-2**) in Standby (**P.1-6**).
- Operations and results may differ by handset status.
- Sample screenshots, etc. are provided for reference only.
- Actual handset windows, menus, etc. may differ in appearance.
- "(Japanese)" appears next to functions or applications which require Japanese ability to use as intended.
- In this guide and on handset, "abroad" means "outside Japan" with regard to handset/service usage.

Guide Usage Notes .....	ii	Optional Services .....	3-9	Video .....	7-5
Table of Contents .....	iii	Additional Functions .....	3-11	Playlists .....	7-6
Accessory .....	v	Troubleshooting .....	3-17	S! Appli .....	7-7
Safety Precautions .....	vi	<b>4 Messaging</b>		Additional Functions .....	7-8
<b>1 Getting Started</b>		Messaging .....	4-2	Troubleshooting .....	7-12
Handset Parts .....	1-2	Sending Messages .....	4-4	<b>8 Handy Extras</b>	
Charging Battery .....	1-4	Incoming Messages .....	4-8	Calendar & Tasks .....	8-2
Power On/Off .....	1-6	Handling Messages .....	4-10	Alarms .....	8-7
Display & Indicators .....	1-7	Mail Groups .....	4-13	Stopwatch .....	8-9
Accessing Functions .....	1-11	Additional Functions .....	4-14	Countdown Timer .....	8-10
Mobile Manners .....	1-15	Troubleshooting .....	4-28	Calculator .....	8-11
Security Codes .....	1-16	<b>5 Internet</b>		Notepad .....	8-12
Basic Tools .....	1-17	Internet Services .....	5-2	Voice Recorder .....	8-13
Additional Functions .....	1-18	Yahoo! Keitai .....	5-3	Scan Barcode .....	8-14
<b>2 Universal Operations, Etc.</b>		PC Site Browser .....	5-4	Additional Functions .....	8-15
Font Size .....	2-2	Browsing .....	5-5	Troubleshooting .....	8-22
Wallpaper .....	2-3	Bookmarks & Saved Pages .....	5-7	<b>9 Entertainment</b>	
Customized Screen .....	2-4	Additional Functions .....	5-8	S! Information Channel .....	9-2
Sounds & Alerts .....	2-5	Troubleshooting .....	5-14	S! Quick News .....	9-3
Text Entry .....	2-6	<b>6 Camera &amp; Imaging</b>		Content Downloads .....	9-4
User Dictionary .....	2-11	Camera .....	6-2	e-Books .....	9-5
Phone Book .....	2-12	Photo Camera .....	6-4	Additional Functions .....	9-6
Additional Functions .....	2-15	Video Camera .....	6-5	Troubleshooting .....	9-9
Troubleshooting .....	2-18	Shooting Modes .....	6-6	<b>10 Handset Security</b>	
<b>3 Calling</b>		Editing Images .....	6-8	Handset Security .....	10-2
Emergency Calls .....	3-2	Additional Functions .....	6-12	Function Control .....	10-4
Voice Calling .....	3-3	Troubleshooting .....	6-15	Additional Functions .....	10-5
Video Calling .....	3-5	<b>7 Media Player &amp; S! Applications</b>		<b>11 Data Folder &amp; Memory Card</b>	
Speed Dial .....	3-6	Media Player .....	7-2	Data Folder .....	11-2
Call Log .....	3-7	Music .....	7-4	Memory Card .....	11-5
Call Time .....	3-8				

Additional Functions .....	11-7
Troubleshooting .....	11-9
<b>12 Connectivity &amp; File Backup</b>	
Infrared.....	12-2
Mass Storage.....	12-5
Backup .....	12-6
S! Addressbook Back-up (SAB).....	12-8
Additional Functions .....	12-11
Troubleshooting .....	12-12
<b>13 Handset Customization</b>	
Date & Time .....	13-2
Display & Illumination .....	13-3
Ringtones & Sounds.....	13-5
Connectivity .....	13-6
Reset .....	13-7
<b>14 Appendix</b>	
USIM Card .....	14-2
Battery .....	14-4
Software Update.....	14-5
Troubleshooting .....	14-6
Key Assignments.....	14-8
Pager Codes .....	14-10
Character Codes .....	14-11
Weather Indicators.....	14-17
Specifications.....	14-18
Menu List .....	14-23
Index.....	14-29
Warranty & Service .....	14-35
Customer Service .....	14-36

## Accessory

### ■ Battery (SHBBY1)



- For accessory-related information, please contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (**P.14-36**).
- Use specified Charger or Headphones (each sold separately) only.

## Safety Precautions







Read safety precautions before using handset.

- Observe precautions to avoid injury to self or others, or damage to property.
- SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any damages resulting from use of this product.

**These labels indicate the degree of risk from improper use. Make sure you thoroughly understand their meanings before reading on.**

 <b>DANGER</b>	<b>Great risk of death or serious injury from improper use</b>
 <b>WARNING</b>	<b>Risk of death or serious injury from improper use</b>
 <b>CAUTION</b>	<b>Risk of serious injury or damage to property from improper use</b>

**These symbols indicate prohibited or compulsory actions. Make sure you thoroughly understand their meanings before reading on.**

	<b>Prohibited actions</b>
Prohibited	
	<b>Disassembly prohibited</b>
Do Not Disassemble	
	<b>Exposure to liquids prohibited</b>
Avoid Liquids Or Moisture	
	<b>Use with wet hands prohibited</b>
Do Not Use Wet Hands	
	<b>Compulsory actions</b>
Compulsory	
	<b>Unplug Charger from outlet</b>
Disconnect Power Source	

## Handset, Battery, USIM Card, Charger (Sold Separately) & Memory Card (Sold Separately)

### DANGER

#### Use specified battery and Charger (sold separately) only.

Non-specified equipment use may cause battery to leak, overheat, burst or ignite, and may cause Charger to overheat, ignite, malfunction, etc.



Compulsory

#### Do not disassemble, modify or solder handset or related hardware.

May cause fire, injury, electric shock or malfunction. Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite.

Modifying handsets is prohibited by the Radio Law and subject to a penalty.



Do Not  
Disassemble

#### Do not expose handset or related hardware to liquids.

Do not let liquid-exposed handset/related hardware remain wet after exposure to water, pet urine, etc.; do not charge wet battery. May cause overheating, electric shock, fire, injury or malfunction.

Use them in an appropriate place properly.



Avoid Liquids  
Or Moisture

Do not charge battery in or expose handset or related hardware to extreme heat (e.g., near fire or sources of heat, in direct sunlight, inside vehicles, etc.).

May cause warping/malfunction; battery may leak, overheat, ignite or burst. Handset or related hardware may become hot to the touch, leading to burn injuries, etc.



Prohibited

#### Do not force battery/Charger into handset. Check the direction and retry.

Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.



Prohibited

### WARNING

Do not place handset, battery or Charger in/on ovens, microwave ovens, pressure cookers, induction stoves or other cooking appliances.

Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite. Handset/Charger may overheat, emit smoke, ignite, malfunction, etc.



Prohibited

Keep handset off and Charger disconnected near gas stations or places with fire/explosion risk.

Handset use near petrochemicals or other flammables may cause fire/explosion.



Compulsory

Do not apply strong shocks or impacts.

Do not drop/throw handset or related hardware. Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite, resulting in fire, electric shock, malfunction, etc.



Prohibited

If there is unusual sound/odor, smoke or any other abnormality:

Continued use may cause fire, electric shock, etc.; grasp plug to disconnect Charger, power handset off, then remove battery, being careful not to burn or injure yourself.



Compulsory

Keep liquids (water, pet urine, etc.) or conductive material (pencil lead, metallic strip, metal jewelry, etc.) away from External Device Port.

May cause short circuit, resulting in fire, malfunction, etc.



Prohibited

### CAUTION

Do not place handset or related hardware on unstable surfaces.

Handset or related hardware may fall, resulting in injury, malfunction, etc.; be especially careful when Vibration is set or while charging.



Prohibited

Keep handset and related hardware out of infants' reach.

Infants may choke from swallowing handset or related hardware or be injured, etc.



Compulsory

## Safety Precautions

If your child is using handset/  
related hardware, explain all  
instructions and supervise usage.  
Misuse may cause injury, etc.



Compulsory

### Battery



Read battery label to confirm battery type;  
use/dispose of battery accordingly.

Symbol on Label	Battery Type
Li-ion00	Lithium-ion

Do not dispose of battery in fire.

Battery may leak, burst, ignite, etc.



Prohibited

Do not damage battery (with a nail,  
hammer, foot, etc.) or subject it to  
strong impacts or shocks.

Battery may leak, overheat, burst,  
ignite, etc.



Prohibited

Keep wire or other metal objects  
away from battery terminals. Do not  
carry/store battery with conductive  
material (pencil lead, metallic strip,  
metal jewelry, etc.).

Battery may leak, overheat, burst,  
ignite, etc.



Prohibited

If battery fluid gets in eyes, do not  
rub; rinse with water and consult a  
doctor immediately.

Eyes may be severely damaged.



Compulsory



## WARNING

If battery fluid contacts skin or  
clothes, discontinue handset use and  
rinse with clean water immediately.  
May cause skin damage.



Compulsory

If battery does not charge properly,  
stop trying.

Battery may leak, overheat, burst,  
ignite, etc.



Compulsory

If there is abnormal odor, excessive  
heat, discoloration or distortion,  
remove battery, being careful not to  
burn or injure yourself. Avoid fire  
sources.

Continued use may cause battery to  
leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.



Compulsory

Keep battery away from pets.

Pet bites may cause battery to leak,  
burst, overheat, ignite, etc.



Compulsory



## CAUTION

Do not dispose of an exhausted  
battery with ordinary refuse.

Tape over battery terminals before  
disposal. Take battery to a SoftBank  
Shop, or follow the local disposal  
regulations.



Prohibited

### Handset



## WARNING

Do not use handset while driving or  
cycling.

Accidents may result.

Phone use while driving or cycling is  
prohibited by law and subject to a  
penalty; park in a legal parking space  
beforehand.



Prohibited

Power handset off near electronic  
devices that employ high precision  
control systems or weak signals.

May cause electronic malfunctions,  
etc. Be especially careful near the  
following devices:  
Hearing aids, implanted pacemakers/  
defibrillators and other electronic  
medical equipment; fire alarms,  
automatic doors and other automatic  
control devices.



Compulsory

Power handset off before boarding  
aircraft to avoid radio waves from  
interfering with aircraft operation.

If mobile phone use is allowed on  
board, follow airline or cabin crew  
instructions regarding handset use.



Compulsory

Users with a heart condition should  
adjust ringtone Vibration and  
Volume as needed.

May cause heart damage.



Compulsory

**If thunder is heard while outdoors, power handset off; find cover.**

There is a risk of lightning strike or electric shock.



Compulsory

**Do not look into Infrared Port during infrared transmissions.**

Eyesight may be affected.



Prohibited



## CAUTION

**Do not use handset when it may affect a vehicle's electronic equipment.**

Handset use inside vehicles may cause electronic equipment to malfunction, resulting in accidents.



Prohibited

**If you experience any skin irritation associated with handset use, discontinue handset use and consult a doctor.**

Metal and other materials (P.14-18) may cause skin irritation, rashes, or itchiness depending on your physical condition.



Compulsory

**Keep handset away from magnetic cards, etc.**

Data on bank cards, credit cards, telephone cards, floppy disks, etc. may be lost.



Prohibited

**Do not swing handset by strap.**

May harm self or others; strap may break, resulting in injury or handset malfunction/breakage.



Prohibited

**Handset may become hot while in use, especially at high temperature.**

Prolonged contact with skin may cause burn injuries.



Compulsory

**Always maintain some distance from Speaker while ringtones, music or other handset sounds play.**

Excessive volume may damage ears or hearing.



Prohibited

**Keep fingers, straps, etc. outside when opening/closing handset.**

May cause injury, breakage, etc.



Compulsory

**Moderate handset volume when using Headphones.**

Excessive volume may damage ears or hearing.



Compulsory

## Charger (Sold Separately)



## WARNING

**Do not cover/wrap Charger while charging.**

Charger may overheat, resulting in fire, malfunction, etc.



Prohibited

**Use only the specified voltage.**

Non-specified voltages may cause fire, malfunction, etc.



Prohibited

- AC Charger (sold separately):  
AC 100V-240V Input
- In-Car Charger (sold separately; use in negative earth vehicles only):  
DC 12V/24V Input

**Leave Charger unplugged during periods of disuse; grasp plug to disconnect it.**

May cause electric shock, fire or malfunction.



Disconnect  
Power Source

**Use only the specified fuse for In-Car Charger (sold separately).**

Non-specified fuse may cause fire or malfunction. See In-Car Charger manual for details.



Compulsory

**If liquids (water, pet urine, etc.) seep inside Charger, grasp plug and disconnect it immediately.**

May cause electric shock, smoke or fire.



Disconnect  
Power Source

## Safety Precautions

If plug is dusty, grasp it and disconnect Charger, then clean with dry cloth.  
Fire may result.



Compulsory

**Do not use In-Car Charger (sold separately) in positive earth vehicles.**  
May cause fire, etc. Use in negative earth vehicles only.



Prohibited

**Plug Charger firmly into the outlet, keeping the plug and charging terminals away from conductive material (pencil lead, metallic strip, metal jewelry, etc.).**  
May cause electric shock, short circuit, fire, etc.



Compulsory

**Do not touch Charger plug with wet hands.**  
May cause electric shock, malfunction, etc.



Do Not Use  
Wet Hands

**Do not touch Charger if thunder is heard.**  
May cause electric shock, etc.



Prohibited



## CAUTION

**Grasp plug and disconnect Charger before cleaning.**

May cause electric shock, etc.



Disconnect  
Power Source

**Always grasp plug (not cord) to disconnect Charger.**

Pulling the plug by cord may damage cord, causing electric shock, fire, etc.



Compulsory

**Do not subject AC Charger (sold separately) to strong shocks or impacts while it is plugged into the outlet.**

May cause malfunction or injury.



Prohibited

## Handset Use & Electronic Medical Equipment

This section is based on "Guidelines on the Use of Radio Communications Equipment such as Cellular Telephones and Safeguards for Electronic Medical Equipment"

(Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference, April 1997) and "Report of Investigation of the Effects of Radio Waves on Medical Equipment, etc." (Association of Radio Industries and Businesses, March 2001).



## WARNING

**Persons with implanted pacemaker/defibrillator should keep handset more than 22 cm away.**

Radio waves may interfere with implanted pacemakers or defibrillators.



Compulsory

**If you intend to use electronic medical equipment other than implanted pacemaker/defibrillator outside medical facilities, consult the vendor on radio wave effects.**

Radio waves may interfere with electronic medical equipment.



Compulsory

---

**Observe these rules inside medical facilities to avoid effects of radio waves on electronic medical equipment:**



Compulsory

- Do not enter an operating room or an Intensive or Coronary Care Unit while carrying a handset.
- Keep handset off in hospitals.
- Even in lobbies or other places where handset use is permitted, keep handset off near electronic medical equipment.
- Obey medical facility rules on mobile phone use.

---

**Power handset off in crowds or trains where persons with implanted pacemaker/defibrillator may be near.**



Compulsory

Radio waves may interfere with implanted pacemakers or defibrillators causing such devices to malfunction.

# General Notes

## General Use

- SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of handset/Memory Card files or settings. Keep separate copies of Phone Book entries, etc.
- Handset transmissions may be disrupted inside buildings, tunnels or underground, or when moving into/out of such places.
- Use handset without disturbing others.
- Handsets are radios as stipulated by the Radio Law. Under the Radio Law, handsets must be submitted for inspection upon request.
- Handset use near landlines, TVs or radios may cause interference.
- For proper use of Memory Card (sold separately), read the manual beforehand.
- Handset is designed exclusively for use in Japan (not made for use abroad).
- **Beware of eavesdropping.**

Because this service is completely digital, the possibility of signal interception is greatly reduced. However, some transmissions may be overheard.

### Eavesdropping

Deliberate/accidental interception of communications constitutes eavesdropping.

- An export license may be required to carry the handset into other countries if it is to be used by or transferred to another person. However, no such license is required when you take the handset abroad for personal use on a vacation or business trip and then bring it back. Export control regulations in the United States provide that an export license granted by the US government is required to carry the handset into Cuba, Iran, North Korea, Sudan or Syria.

## Handset & Hardware Care

- Handset is not waterproofed. Avoid exposure to liquids and high humidity.
  - Keep handset away from precipitation.
  - Cold air from air conditioning, etc. may condense causing corrosion.
  - Avoid dropping handset in damp places (restroom, bath/shower room, etc.).
  - On the beach, keep handset away from water and direct sunlight.
  - Perspiration may seep inside handset causing malfunction.
- If handset is left with no battery or an exhausted one, data may be altered/lost. SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any resulting damages.
- Use handset between 5°C - 35°C (35% - 85% humidity).
- Avoid extreme temperatures or direct sunlight.
- Exposing lens to direct sunlight may damage color filter and affect image color.
- Battery may not charge properly if ports/terminals are obstructed by dust, etc. Clean with dry cloth, cotton swab, etc.
- Clean handset with soft dry cloth. Using alcohol, thinner, etc. may damage it.
- Avoid scratching Display.
- Avoid heavy objects or excessive pressure. May cause malfunction or injury.
  - Do not sit on handset in back pants pocket.
  - Do not place heavy objects on handset inside handbags, packs, etc.

- Connect only specified products to External Device Port. Other devices may malfunction or cause damage.
- Always power handset off before removing battery. If battery is removed while saving data or sending mail, data may be lost, changed or destroyed.
- Do not power handset off while using Memory Card; may result in data loss or malfunction.
- When walking outside, moderate handset volume to avoid accidents.

## Function Usage Limits

These functions are disabled after handset upgrade/replacement or service cancellation: Camera; Media Player; S! Applications. After a period of disuse, these functions may be unusable; retrieve Network Information (P.13-6) to restore usability.

## Mobile Camera

- Mind your manners when using handset camera.
- Test the camera before capturing/recording special moments.
- Do not use handset camera in places where photography or videography is prohibited.

## In-Call/Transmission Caution

During calls/transmissions, calling/transmission charges/fees apply even if other functions or operations are simultaneously in use.

# Rights, Trademarks & Patents

## Portrait Rights

Portrait rights protect individuals' right to refuse to be photographed or to refuse unauthorized publication/use of their photographs. Portrait rights consist of the right to privacy, which is applicable to all persons, and the right to publicity, which protects the interests of celebrities. Therefore, photographing others including celebrities and publicizing/distributing their photographs without permission is illegal; use handset camera responsibly.

## Copyrights

Copyright laws protect sounds, images, computer programs, databases, other materials and copyright holders. Duplicated material is limited to private use only. Use of materials beyond this limit or without permission of copyright holders may constitute copyright infringement, and be subject to criminal punishment. Comply with copyright laws when using images captured with handset camera.

The software contained in handset is copyrighted material; copyright, moral right and other related rights are protected by copyright laws. Do not copy, modify, alter, disassemble, decompile or reverse-engineer the software; do not separate it from hardware in whole or part.

Video recording and playback are based on **MPEG-4**. This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License for the personal and non-commercial use of a consumer to (i) encode video in compliance with the MPEG-4 Video Standard ("MPEG-4 Video") and/or (ii) decode MPEG-4 Video that was encoded by a consumer engaged in a personal and non-commercial activity and/or was obtained from a licensed video provider. No license is granted or implied for any other use. Additional information may be obtained from MPEG LA.

See <http://www.mpegla.com>.

This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 Systems Patent Portfolio License for encoding in compliance with the MPEG-4 Systems Standard, except that an additional license and payment of royalties are necessary for encoding in connection with (i) data stored or replicated in physical media which is paid for on a title by title basis and/or (ii) data which is paid for on a title by title basis and is transmitted to an end user for permanent storage and/or use. Such additional license may be obtained from MPEG LA, LLC.

See <http://www.mpegla.com> for additional details.



Handset employs RSA® BSAFE™ software developed by RSA Security Inc.

RSA is a registered trademark of RSA Security Inc.

BSAFE is a registered trademark of RSA Security Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.

This product is equipped with JBlend™ designed to accelerate the performance of Java™ Application. Powered by JBlend™. Copyright 1997-2010 Aplix Corporation.

All rights reserved.

JBlend and JBlend-related brands are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.

Java and Java-related brands are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.



The microSD logo is a trademark of SD-3C, LLC.

## NetFront®

This product employs NetFront Browser (Internet browser) and NetFront SMIL Player developed by ACCESS Co., Ltd.

Copyright© 2010 ACCESS Co., Ltd.

ACCESS and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS Co., Ltd. in Japan or other countries.

This product includes a module developed by Independent JPEG Group.

Powered by Mascot Capsule®/Micro3D Edition™. Mascot Capsule is a registered trademark of HI Corporation.

©2002-2010 HI Corporation. All rights reserved.

QR Code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED.



**ADOBE  
FLASH  
ENABLED**

This product contains Adobe® Flash® Lite™ player software under license from Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Adobe Flash Lite Copyright © 2003-2007 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved. Adobe, Flash and Flash Lite are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and other countries.

VeilView and Animation View are trademarks or registered trademarks of SHARP Corporation.

Chaku-Uta and Chaku-Uta Full are registered trademarks of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

BookSurfing® is a registered trademark of CELSYS Inc., Voyager Japan, Inc. and INFOCITY Inc.

SOFTBANK, SoftBank and the SoftBank logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK CORP. in Japan and other countries.

Yahoo! and the Yahoo! and Y! logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Yahoo! Inc.

### CP8 PATENT

Video Call, S! Application, Customized Screen, Sky Mail, Movie Sha-mail, Sha-mail, Input Memory, S! Mail, Graphic Mail, S! Information Channel, PC Site Browser, Weather Indicator, S! Quick News, S! Addressbook Back-up and Secure Remote Lock are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

Other company and product names mentioned herein are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.

## Specific Absorption Rate (SAR)

### 840SH meets the government's requirements for exposure to radio waves.

These requirements are based on scientific basis to assure that radio waves emitted from mobile phones and other handheld wireless devices do not affect human health. They require that the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR), which is the unit of measurement for the amount of radiofrequency absorbed by the body, shall not exceed 2 W/kg\*. This limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age or health, and meets the international standard set by International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) in cooperation with World Health Organization (WHO).

All mobile phones, prior to product launch, must be certified as compliant with government requirements as stipulated by the Radio Law. 840SH has been granted Technical Regulations Conformity Certification by TELECOM ENGINEERING CENTER. Its highest SAR value is 0.672 W/kg. This value was obtained by TELECOM ENGINEERING CENTER as part of the certification process. SAR tests were conducted with handset transmitting at its highest certified power level in accordance with testing methods set by the government. While there may be differences between the SAR levels for various handsets, they all meet the governmental requirements for safe exposure. The actual SAR level of the handset while operating can be well below the highest value. This is because the handset is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the Network.

Additional information on SAR can be obtained on the following Websites.

Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications  
<http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/sys/ele/index.htm>  
 Association of Radio Industries and Businesses (ARIB)  
<http://www.arib-ermf.org/> (Japanese)

\*Requirements are stipulated in Radio Law (Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment, Article 14-2).

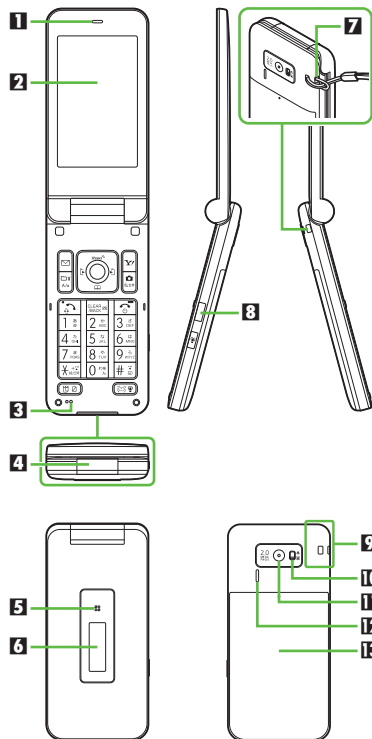
<b>Handset Parts .....</b>	<b>1-2</b>
Parts & Functions .....	1-2
<b>Charging Battery .....</b>	<b>1-4</b>
Charging Battery (AC Charger) .....	1-4
Charging Battery (In-Car Charger) .....	1-5
<b>Power On/Off .....</b>	<b>1-6</b>
Handset Power On/Off .....	1-6
<b>Display &amp; Indicators .....</b>	<b>1-7</b>
Display .....	1-7
Indicators .....	1-8

<b>Accessing Functions .....</b>	<b>1-11</b>
Main Menu .....	1-12
Key Shortcut .....	1-13
Using Simplified Menus (Simple Menu) .....	1-14
<b>Mobile Manners .....</b>	<b>1-15</b>
<b>Security Codes .....</b>	<b>1-16</b>
<b>Basic Tools .....</b>	<b>1-17</b>
My Details & Basic Tools .....	1-17
<b>Additional Functions .....</b>	<b>1-18</b>

# 1

## Getting Started

## Parts & Functions



- 1** Earpiece
- 2** Display
- 3** Microphone
- 4** External Device Port (with Port Cover)
- 5** Small Light
- 6** External Display
- 7** Strap Eyelet
- 8** Infrared Port
- 9** Internal Antenna Location
- 10** Portrait/Macro Selector
- 11** Camera (lens cover)
- 12** Speaker
- 13** Battery Cover

- Do not cover or place stickers, etc. over Internal Antenna area.
- Replace Port Cover after Port use.
- Avoid metallic straps; Antenna sensitivity may be affected.

### Handset Positions

#### Handset Closed



Keep handset closed when not in use.

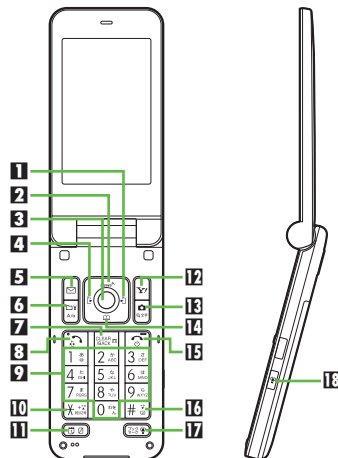
#### Handset Open



Open handset to place or answer calls, enter text, etc.

## Handset Keys

- Keys are indicated in this guide as shown.
- Change functions with \* via Set Key Shortcut as needed.

**1 Multi Selector (right)**

Open Received Calls. Long Press to activate/cancel Infrared\*.

**2 Multi Selector (up)**

Open Standby Window. Long Press to open PC Site Browser menu\*.

**3 Center Key**

Open Main Menu. Long Press to activate/cancel Keypad Lock.

**4 Multi Selector (left)**

Open Dialed Numbers. Long Press to open Alarm list\*.

**5 Mail Key**

Open Messaging menu. Long Press to open S! Mail Composition window\*.

**6 Data Folder & A/a Key**

Open Data Folder. Long Press to activate Display Light.

**7 Clear/Back Key**

Play Answer Phone messages. Long Press to activate/cancel Answer Phone.

**8 Start Key**

Open All Calls.

**9 Keypad**

Enter numbers to place calls or access functions (Quick Operations). Long Press to open Phone Book.

**10 \* Key**

Enter \*, +, P, ? and -.

**11 Calendar Key**

Open Calendar. Long Press to activate/cancel VeilView.

**12 Yahoo! Keitai Key**

Open Yahoo! Keitai portal. Long Press to open Yahoo! Keitai menu\*.

**13 Camera & Text Key**

Activate mobile camera. Long Press to open Change Menu window.

**14 Multi Selector (down)**

Open Phone Book. Long Press to create new Phone Book entries\*.

**15 Power On/Off Key**

Toggle Standby display. Long Press to power handset off.

**16 # Key**

Enter #. Long Press to activate/cancel Manner mode.

**17 Bookmarks & Manner Key**

Open Bookmarks. Long Press to activate/cancel Manner mode.

## Side Key

**18 Manner Key**

**Closed:** Long Press to activate/cancel Manner mode.

## Multi Selector

- In this guide, Multi Selector operations are indicated as follows:

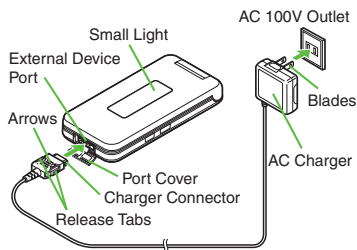
Press  or	
Press  or	
Press , ,  or	

## 1 Charging Battery (AC Charger)

Getting Started

Battery must be inserted in handset to charge it.

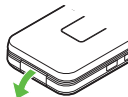
- Use specified AC Charger **ZTDAA1** (sold separately) only. In this guide, ZTDAA1 is referred to as "AC Charger."
- Handset and AC Charger may warm while charging.



### Important AC Charger Usage Note

- Fold back blades after charging. Do not pull, bend or twist the cord.

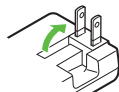
### 1 Open Port Cover as shown



### 2 Insert Charger Connector

- With arrows up, insert connector until it clicks.

### 3 Extend blades and plug AC Charger into AC outlet



- Small Light illuminates red while charging.
- Small Light goes out when battery is full.

### 4 Unplug AC Charger

- Pull AC Charger straight out.

### 5 Disconnect handset

- Squeeze Charger Connector release tabs and pull straight out to remove.

### 6 Fold back blades and replace Port Cover

#### When Small Light Flashes

- Battery is unchargeable; may be defective or simply at the end of its life; replace it.

#### USB Charge

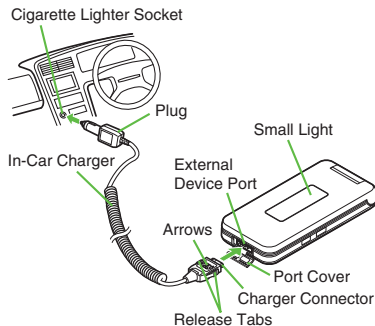
- Connect handset (with power on) to PC via USB Cable to charge battery.
  - Download and install USB Cable driver beforehand.
  - Battery may not charge if handset is connected through a USB hub.

### Advanced

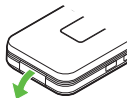
- Disabling USB Charge (P.1-18)

## Charging Battery (In-Car Charger)

In-Car Charger may be purchased separately.



### 1 Open Port Cover as shown



### 2 Insert Charger Connector

- With arrows up, insert connector until it clicks.

### 3 Plug Charger into cigarette lighter socket

### 4 Start car engine

- Small Light illuminates red while charging.
- Small Light goes out when battery is full.

### 5 Unplug Charger

### 6 Disconnect handset

- Squeeze Charger Connector release tabs and pull straight out to remove.

### 7 Replace Port Cover

#### Important In-Car Charger Usage Notes

- Disconnect Charger before leaving vehicle to prevent charging with engine off.
- Avoid charging battery inside extremely hot vehicles.

# Handset Power On/Off

## Power On

Follow these steps when powering on 840SH for the first time:

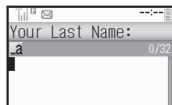
### 1 (Long)

- After Power On Graphic, follow the steps below.

→ → → → → → 設定  
 → → Language → → English  
 → → (Long) → (Long) →  
 Change Menu window opens

### 2 Select option →

Guide descriptions are based on Standard Menu.



- My Details setup starts.

### 3 Enter last name →

#### Enter first name →

- Change Menu display option confirmation appears.

### 4 Yes or No →



Standby

- Choose **No** to enter Standby immediately after powering on.

#### When USIM Card is Not Installed

- Insert USIM Card** appears; insert the card to use handset.

## Retrieving Network Information

Handset initiates Network Information retrieval when , or is pressed for the first time.



Follow these steps to retrieve Network Information to use Network-related services and Camera; retrieval automatically sets Clock:

### 1 Yes → → Retrieval starts

### 2

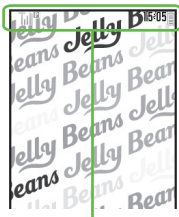
## Power Off

### 1 (Long)

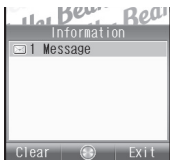
- After Power Off Graphic, handset shuts down.

# Display

## Standby



- Indicators (signal strength, battery strength, etc.) appear.
- Information window opens at the bottom for Missed Calls, new mail, etc.

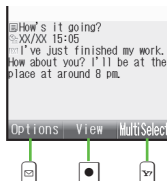


Information Window

- Information label (e.g., **Message**, etc.) and count appear in Information window. Select an item and press to open it.

## Softkeys

Functions/operations assigned to , , and appear at the bottom.



## Display Saving

- Display goes dark after Display Saving time elapses. Press any key to activate it.

## Backlight

- Backlight turns off after Time Out time elapses. Press - to illuminate it (key press may affect active function).
- Display goes dark during a call. (Backlight does not turn off first).

## Advanced

- Handling Information list (P.1-18)

# Indicators

## Display Indicators

### Basic Status

1		Signal strength*
2		Packet transmission available
3		Battery strength

\*The more bars the better.

### Function Status

1		Active S! Application
1		Paused S! Application
		Music playback in progress
		Memory Card inserted
2		Accessing Memory Card
		Reading Memory Card
		Formatting Memory Card

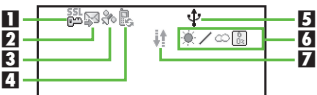
### Notifications

1		Unread mail
2		Unread Delivery Report
2		Answer Phone active & message recorded
		Answer Phone canceled & message recorded
3		New Voicemail
4		S! Appli Notification
5		Contents Key received
6		Unread S! Information Channel info
		Software Update result
		Unread S! Quick News info

### Warnings

1		Mail memory low
2		Message delivery failure
3		Memory Card unusable/misinserted

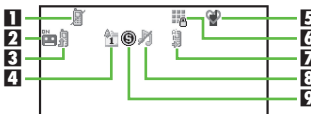
## ■ Transmissions



1	SSL	SSL browsing in progress
2	Waiting packet transmission	
3	Packet transmission protocol ready	
4	Receiving mail	
	Sending mail	
3	Positioning in progress*	
4	Software Update in progress	
	USB Cable connected	
	USB transmission in progress	
	Infrared transmission in progress	
5	Infrared file transfer in progress	
	S! Addressbook Back-up transmission in progress	
	PC Site Browser in use	
6	Weather Indicator	
7	Infrared transmission ready	

\*Flashes while positioning.

## ■ Settings



1	Offline Mode active
2	Answer Phone active
3	Call Forwarding or Voicemail active (forwarding condition: <b>Always</b> *)
	Schedule/Task (Alarm set)
4	Schedule/Task (Alarm unset)
	Alarm set
	Manner mode active
5	Drive mode active
	Original mode active
	VeilView active
6	Keypad Lock active
7	Auto Answer or Remote Monitor active

		Ringtone (Silent)
8		Ringtone (Increasing Volume)
		Vibration active
9		Show Secret Data active
		Function Lock active

\*Indicator does not appear when Call Forwarding is set to Video Calls only, with Voicemail unset.

## External Display Indicators

## ■ Basic Status



1	Signal strength*
2	Battery strength

\*The more bars the better.

## ■ Notifications

	Missed Calls
	Answer Phone message recorded
	Missed Call Notification
	New Voicemail
	Unread mail
	Unread Delivery Report
	Contents Key received
	Unread S! Information Channel info
	Weather Indicator update
	Weather Indicator
	Location Info request

## ■ Warnings

	Message delivery failure
	S! Information Channel info reception failure
	Weather Indicator update failure

## ■ Handset Status

	Alarm
	Schedule Alarm
	Task Alarm
	S! Appli Widget Notification

## Activating Backlight

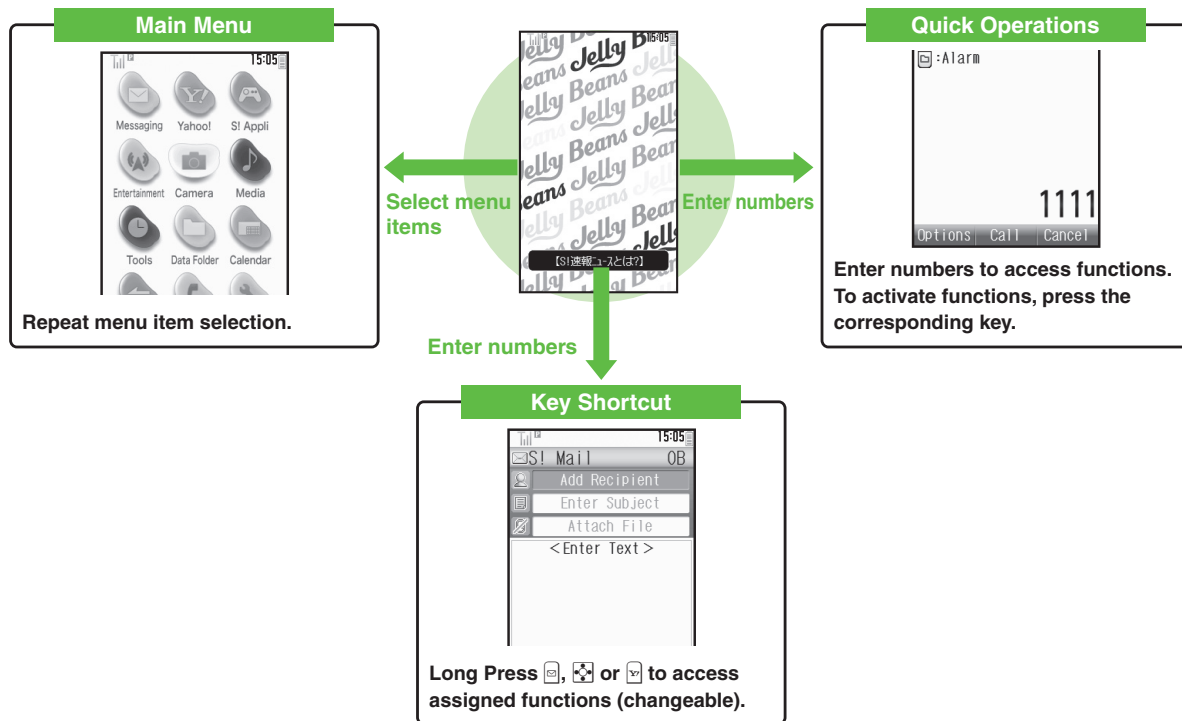


## External Display Date &amp; Time

- Press to toggle Clock view.

# Accessing Functions

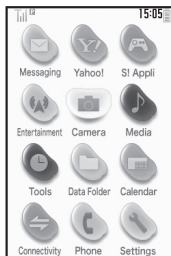
Use the following methods as needed.



# Main Menu

## Menu Item Selection



1 




- Main Menu opens.

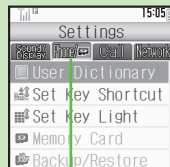
2 Use  to select menu item  
➔ 



- Menu/window opens.
- If Sub Menu opens, use  to select an item and press .


### Tabs

- Menus/lists in a single window appear in separate tabs; use  to toggle tabs.




### Tab

### Reverse Navigation

- Press . If a confirmation appears, follow onscreen prompts.

### Returning to Standby

- Press . If a confirmation appears, follow onscreen prompts.




### Simple Menu







- Simplify menus and enlarge fonts; ideal for users who use only basic handset functions.

## Main Menu Items


<b>Messaging</b>	Open/create messages, etc.
<b>Yahoo!</b>	Browse the Internet
<b>S! Appli</b>	Use S! Applications including games
<b>Entertainment</b>	Receive news, read e-Books, etc.
<b>Camera</b>	Capture images or record video
<b>Media</b>	Play/download media files
<b>Tools</b>	Set Alarm, scan QR Codes, etc.
<b>Data Folder</b>	Open files saved on handset/Memory Card
<b>Calendar</b>	Manage schedules
<b>Connectivity</b>	Exchange files with other devices
<b>Phone</b>	Search contacts, add entries, etc.
<b>Settings</b>	Customize handset interface, sounds, etc.

# Key Shortcut

In Standby, Long Press ,  or  to access assigned functions.

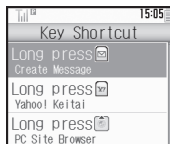
	Open S! Mail Composition window
	Open PC Site Browser menu
	Create new Phone Book entries
	Open Alarm list
	Activate/cancel Infrared
	Open Yahoo! Keitai menu

## Changing Assigned Functions

Follow these steps to assign Calculator to  (Long Press):

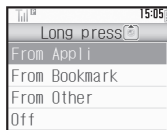
1  ➔ **Settings** ➔ 

2  **Phone/Keypad** ➔ **Set Key Shortcut** ➔ 



Key Shortcut Menu

3 **Long press**  ➔ 



4 **From Appli** ➔ 

5 **Tools** ➔  ➔ **Calculator** ➔ 

### Bookmark

In 4, **From Bookmark** ➔  ➔


Select title ➔  ➔ **Yes** ➔ 

### Infrared or Show Secret Data On/Off

In 4, **From Other** ➔  ➔ **Select**

item ➔ 

### Canceling Assigned Function

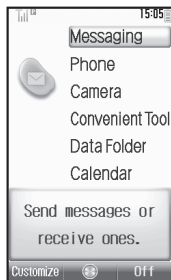
In 4, **Off** ➔ 

# 1 Using Simplified Menus (Simple Menu)

Getting Started

## Simple Menu Features

Activate Simple Menu to reduce available handset functions and simplify menus.



- Fonts are enlarged and appear in bold.
- Clock is enlarged (Calendar is hidden).

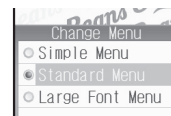
## Menu Items

<b>Messaging</b>	Received Msg., Create Msg., Drafts, Templates, Sent Messages, Unsent Msg., Create SMS
<b>Phone</b>	Phone Book, Add New Entry, Call Log, Play Messages, Answer Phone, Call Voicemail, My Details, Speed Dial/Mail
<b>Camera</b>	Photo Camera, Video Camera, Scan Barcode
<b>Convenient Tool</b>	Alarms, Calculator, Assignment, Notepad, Change Menu
<b>Data Folder</b>	-
<b>Calendar</b>	-

Key assignments are largely the same as those in Standard Menu.

## Activating Simple Menu

### 1 (Long)



### 2 Simple Menu ➔

#### While Using an Incompatible Function

- End the function before activating Simple Menu.

#### Canceling Simple Menu

(Long) ➔ Standard Menu ➔

## Mobile Manners

Please use your handset responsibly. Use these basic tips as a guide. Inappropriate handset use can be both dangerous and bothersome. Please take care not to disturb others when using your handset. Adjust handset use according to your surroundings.


- Turn it off in theaters, museums and other places where silence is the norm.
- Refrain from using it in restaurants, hotel lobbies, elevators, etc.
- Observe signs and instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- Refrain from use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

### Manner Mode

Mutes most handset function sounds.

#### 1 (Long)



- Manner mode is set.
- Alternatively, Long Press .

### When Manner Mode is Active

- Ringtones and other sounds are muted.
- 840SH vibrates for transmissions/alerts.
- Shutter click still sounds at fixed volume.

### Canceling Manner Mode

#### (Long)

### Offline Mode

Temporarily suspends all transmissions.



#### 1 ➔ **Settings** ➔ ➔ **Network**

#### 2 **Offline Mode** ➔

#### 3 **On** ➔

- Offline Mode is set.

### Canceling Offline Mode

In , **Off** ➔ 

## Advanced

-   Changing handset modes  Creating a custom mode  Resetting Mode Settings (P.1-18)

## Security Codes

These codes are required for handset use.

- Write down Security Codes.
- Do not reveal Security Codes. SoftBank Mobile is not liable for misuse or damages.

<b>Handset Code</b>	9999 by default; use or change some functions
<b>Center Access Code</b>	4-digit code selected at contract; access Optional Services via landlines or change contract details
<b>Network Password*</b>	4-digit code selected at contract; restrict incoming/outgoing calls (Call Barring)

\*Change as needed.

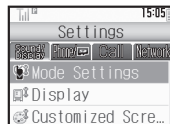
### Incorrect Code Entry

- Message appears for incorrect code entries; retry.
- If Network Password is incorrectly entered three times consecutively, Call Barring settings are locked. To resolve, Network Password and Center Access Code must be changed.

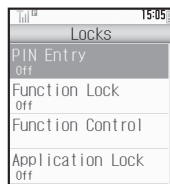
### Changing Handset Code

Enter four to eight digits for new Handset Code.

1 ➔ **Settings** ➔



2 ➔ **Phone/** ➔ **Locks** ➔



3 ➔ **Chg. Handset Code** ➔



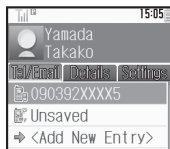
4 ➔ **Enter current Handset Code** ➔

5 ➔ **Enter new Handset Code** ➔

6 ➔ **Re-enter new Handset Code** ➔

## My Details & Basic Tools

### My Number



- Handset phone number and the name entered at initial setup appear.

### Editing My Details

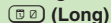
After **1**, (select tab) ➔ **Select item** ➔ ➔ **Select item** ➔ ➔ **Edit** ➔

### VeilView

Activate VeilView to prevent peeking.



### Canceling VeilView



### Keypad Lock

Lock handset keys and prevent accidental operation/function activation.



- Keypad Lock activates.
- does not turn off handset power.

### Incoming Calls while Keypad Lock is Active

- Keypad Lock is temporarily canceled; press to answer calls. Keypad Lock reactivates after the call.

### Canceling Keypad Lock



### Display Light



- Display turns white and Backlight brightens.

### Canceling Display Light

- Press any key to turn Display Light off.

## Advanced

- Clearing My Details ● Changing VeilView pattern/density (P.1-18)

## USB Charge

Disabling USB Charge → → *Connectivity* → → *USB Charge* → → *Disable* →

## Information

Handling Information list

*Start Here* → → *Phone* → → See below

*Opening List Manually Information* →

*Clearing List Information* → → → Yes →

## Mode Settings

Changing handset modes

*Start Here* → → *Settings* → → In Sound/Display menu, *Mode Settings* → → See below

*Selecting a Handset Mode*  
Select mode →

*Customizing Handset Modes*  
Select mode → → Select item → → Adjust settings  
• Not available for Normal mode.

Creating a custom mode  
→ *Settings* → → In Sound/Display menu, *Mode Settings* → → *Original* → → Select item → → Adjust settings

Resetting Mode Settings  
→ *Settings* → → In Sound/Display menu, *Mode Settings* → → Select mode → → Enter Handset Code → → Yes →

## My Details

Clearing My Details → → *0-7* → → *Reset My Details* → → Yes →

## VeilView

Changing VeilView pattern/density

*Start Here* → → *Settings* → → In Sound/Display menu, *Display* → → *VeilView* → → See below

*Pattern*  
*Pattern Setting* → → Select pattern →

*Pattern Scale*  
*Scale Setting* → → Select scale or *Animation* →

*Pattern Color*  
*Color Setting* → → Select color →

*Density*  
*Density Setting* → → Adjust density →   
• For *Density:2* or *Density:3*, use before pressing to adjust the pattern appearance for straight view.

<b>Font Size .....</b>	<b>2-2</b>
Changing Font Size .....	2-2
<b>Wallpaper .....</b>	<b>2-3</b>
<b>Customized Screen.....</b>	<b>2-4</b>
Customized Screen (Japanese) .....	2-4
<b>Sounds &amp; Alerts .....</b>	<b>2-5</b>
Customizing Handset Responses ...	2-5
<b>Text Entry .....</b>	<b>2-6</b>
Entering Characters.....	2-7
Editing Characters .....	2-10

<b>User Dictionary .....</b>	<b>2-11</b>
Saving Frequently Used Words .....	2-11
<b>Phone Book.....</b>	<b>2-12</b>
Creating Phone Book Entries .....	2-12
Using Phone Book Entries .....	2-14
<b>Additional Functions .....</b>	<b>2-15</b>
<b>Troubleshooting.....</b>	<b>2-18</b>

# 2

## Universal Operations, Etc.

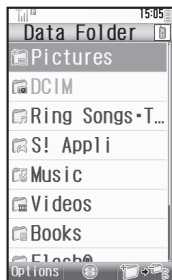


## Changing Font Size

2 Universal Operations, Etc.

### Enlarging All Fonts

Activate Large Font Menu to enlarge fonts for menus, text entry, etc. as follows:



1  (Long)

2 **Large Font Menu** ➔ 

**Canceling Large Font Menu**

In 2, **Standard Menu** ➔ 

### Customizing Font Sizes

1  ➔ **Settings** ➔ 

2 In Sound/Display menu, **Display** ➔ 

3 **Font Settings** ➔ 



Font Settings Menu

4 **Font Size** ➔  ➔ **Select item** ➔ 

5 **Select size** ➔ 

### Changing Font Weight

1 In Font Settings menu, **Font Weight** ➔ 

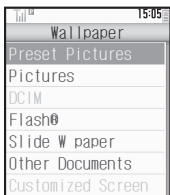
2 **Select weight** ➔ 



# Wallpaper

1 ➔ **Settings** ➔ ➔ In **Sound/Display menu, Display** ➔

2 **Wallpaper** ➔



Wallpaper Menu

3 **Select folder** ➔

4 **Select image** ➔

- Some files may not be usable.
- Omit the next step when **Preset Pictures** is selected in .

5

**Selecting Images Smaller or Larger than Display**

After 4, select option ➔ ➔

- For **Centered**, use to zoom in/out or press to rotate.

**Selecting Images with Limited Usage Period**

- A confirmation appears. Follow these steps:

**Yes** ➔ ➔

## Slide Show Wallpaper

Set Slide Show to appear in Standby.  
Some images may not appear.

1 In Wallpaper menu, **Slide W paper** ➔

2 **Folder Setting** ➔

3 **Pictures or DCIM** ➔

4 **Select sub folder** ➔ ➔ **Set this folder** ➔

- Omit steps for sub folder if none.

**If There is No Image in Set Folder**

- Preset images appear.

**Using Preset Images**

In , **Preset Pictures** ➔

**Changing Pattern**

In 2, **Pattern Setting** ➔ ➔ **Select**

**pattern** ➔

- To check patterns, select one and press .

2

Universal Operations, Etc.



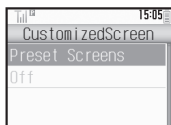
## Customized Screen (Japanese)

2

Universal Operations, Etc.

### Customized Screen Setup

1  → 




2 **Preset Screens** → 

3 **Select pattern** → 

4 

#### When Selected Customized Screen is Active

- Cancellation confirmation appears after ③.  
To cancel, choose **Yes** and press .

### Canceling Customized Screen

1  → 

2 **Off** → 

3 **Yes** → 



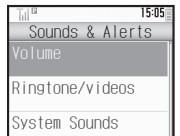
# Customizing Handset Responses

2

Universal Operations, Etc.

## Ringtone

- 1 ➔ **Settings** ➔ ➔ In **Sound/Display** menu, **Sounds & Alerts** ➔



Sounds & Alerts Menu

- 2 **Ringtone/videos** ➔
- 3 **Select item** ➔   
For **For New Message**, etc., select **Assign Tone** and press .
- 4 **Select folder** ➔
- 5 **Select tone/file** ➔

## Setting Ring Time for Incoming Mail, etc.

- After , **Duration** ➔ ➔ Enter time ➔
- Playing Video for Incoming Transmissions  
In , **Videos** ➔ ➔ Select file ➔
- If Portion of File Content is Specifiable
  - After , start point selection window opens. Follow these steps:  
**Select start point** ➔
- Selecting Files with Limited Usage Period
  - A confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** and press to proceed.

## Vibration

- 1 In **Sounds & Alerts** menu, **Vibration** ➔
- 2 **Select item** ➔ ➔ **Switch On/Off** ➔
- 3 **On** ➔
- 4 **Vibration Pattern** ➔
  - To check vibration patterns, select one and press .
- 5 **Select pattern** ➔

## Setting Ringtones to Control Vibration

- In , **Link to Sound** ➔
- Important Vibration Usage Note**
  - Cancel Vibration when charging battery to help avoid accidents.

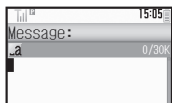


## Text Entry

2

Universal Operations, Etc.

Unless noted otherwise, text entry descriptions are for text entry windows.



Text Entry Window (Message Text)

### Opening Help

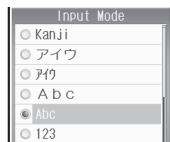


### Note

- Pressing repeatedly may not close text entry windows.

### Switching Entry Modes

1



- Available entry modes appear.

2 Select mode

- Entry Mode Indicators:

	Kanji (hiragana)
	Double/single-byte katakana
	Double-byte alphanumerics (upper/lower case)
	Single-byte alphanumerics (upper/lower case)
	Single-byte number
	Character Code

appears when Predictive is active.

### Character Entry Basics

Use Keypad to enter characters. Multiple characters are assigned to each key. Press a key to toggle character options for that key.

**Example: In double-byte katakana entry, press three times.**



- Press to toggle options in reverse. To type characters assigned to the same key, press first.

**Example: In single-byte alphanumerics mode, enter no.**



- Long Press a key to enter the current character and advance cursor.



### Advanced

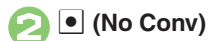
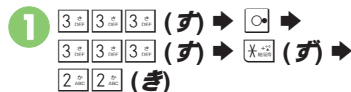
- Using Character Codes
- Using Pager Code (P.2-15)



# Entering Characters

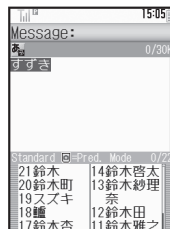
## Hiragana

Follow these steps to enter **すずぎ** in kanji (hiragana) mode:

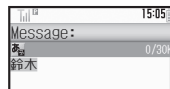


## Kanji

Convert **すずぎ** to **鈴木**.



- In kanji (hiragana) mode, word suggestions change as hiragana are typed. (Predictive)
- Press to toggle suggestion mode between Standard, Business, Male and Female. (Personal Mode)



- To exit suggestion list, press .



- Words likely to follow the entry appear based on previous entries. (Previous Usage)

### When Target Word is Not Listed

- Press or to segment hiragana to convert separately.
  - Press to toggle Predictive and Non-Predictive suggestions.

### Phonetic Conversion

Type reading in hiragana ➔

## Advanced

- Inserting line breaks
- Inserting spaces
- Using Keypad to enter words/phrases from suggestion list
- Clearing entry log
- Changing Font Size
- Disabling suggestions based on entered characters
- Disabling suggestions based on entered words
- Disabling emoticon/Pictogram suggestions based on entered words
- Lowering type priorities in suggestion list
- Selecting a suggestion mode (P.2-15)



## One-Hiragana Conversion

Type the first hiragana to access previously selected words.

Example: **すずぎ** was previously converted to **鈴木**.

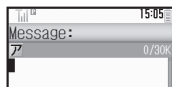
1 3 3 3 (す) ➔

2 Select word/phrase ➔

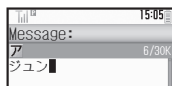
## Katakana

Follow these steps to switch to double-byte katakana mode and enter **ジュン**.

1 ➔ アイウ ➔



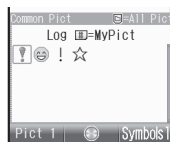
2 3 3 (シ) ➔ (ジ) ➔  
8 8 (ユ) ➔ (ユ) ➔  
0 0 0 (ン) ➔



## Pictograms &amp; Symbols

May be unavailable depending on the entry mode.

1



• Pictogram/Symbol Log appears.

2 or ➔ List toggles



• While entering message subject or text, press in Pictogram List to toggle Cross-Carrier Pictograms and all Pictograms.

3 Select Pictogram or Symbol ➔

• Pictograms are double-byte even in single-byte modes.

4 ➔ List closes

## Emoticons

1 ➔ **Emoticons** ➔

2 Select emoticon ➔

## Alternative Emoticon Entry Method

• In kanji (hiragana) mode, type **かお** or a descriptive word such as **わーい** or **うーん**, then convert the entry.

## EmoticonWordLink

• Immediately after inserting a descriptive word such as **嬉しい** or **悲しい**, corresponding emoticons may appear in the suggestion list.



## Mail &amp; Web Extensions

Enter **.co.jp**, **http://**, etc., easily.

1 ➔ **Quick Addr. List** ➔

2 **Select extension** ➔

- Extensions are single-byte even in double-byte entry modes.

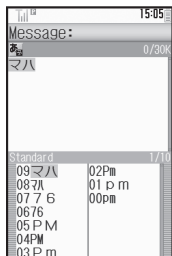
Hiragana to Katakana/  
Alphanumeric Conversion

Enter katakana and alphanumerics in kanji (hiragana) mode.

Example: To enter **PM**

Use key inscriptions.

1 7 6 ➔



2 **Select word/phrase (PM)** ➔

## Quick Conversion (for Hiragana)

A list of word suggestions appears based on the key pressed.

Example: To enter **終電**

1 3 (さ) ➔ 8 (や) ➔ 1 (あ)  
➔ 4 (た) ➔ 0 (わ) ➔



2 **Select word/phrase (終電)** ➔

## One Hiragana Word Call

- Type the first hiragana of entries you used Quick Conversion for and press .

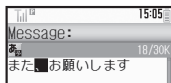


## Editing Characters

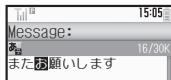
### Deleting & Editing

Follow these steps to correct **また、お願いします** to **また明日お願いします**.

#### 1 Select character

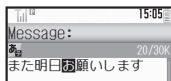


#### 2



- The highlighted character is deleted.

#### 3 Select target location ➡ Enter characters



### Recovering Deleted Characters

- Press once for each character after deletion.

### Deleting All Text

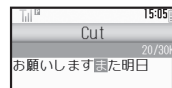
- Long Press at the end of text. To delete characters on and after cursor, select the first character of text and Long Press .

### Jumping to the End or Top of Text

- ➡ *Cursor Position* ➡ ➡ *Jump to End or Jump to Top* ➡

### Copy/Cut & Paste

#### 1 ➡ *Cut or Copy* ➡ ➡ *Select first character* ➡

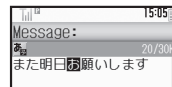


Cut

- To cancel and start over, press .

#### 2 Highlight text range ➡

#### 3 Select target location ➡ (Long)



- Text is entered.

### Pasting Previously Cut/Copied Text

Select target location ➡ ➡ *Paste*

➡ ➡ *Select text* ➡

- Available when Paste List appears.

### Advanced

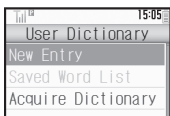
- Undo conversion or recover deleted characters
- Inserting Phone Book entry items (P.2-15)

## Saving Frequently Used Words

### Saving Words (Japanese)

Saved words appear among suggestions.

- 1 ➔ **Settings** ➔ ➔ ➔ **Phone/** ➔ **User Dictionary** ➔



User Dictionary Menu

- 2 **New Entry** ➔ ➔ **Enter word** ➔
- 3 **Enter reading** ➔

#### Editing Entries

- In , **Saved Word List** ➔ ➔ **Select word** ➔ ➔ **Edit** ➔ ➔ **Edit reading** ➔ ➔ **Yes** ➔

### 840SH Download Dictionary (Japanese)

Get specialized 840SH Download Dictionaries via SH-web Mobile Internet site (ウェブページ) in Bookmarks; see P.5-7).

Activate dictionaries to improve handset character conversion. Dictionary words appear among suggestions.

Some dictionary files may not be usable.

- 1 In **User Dictionary menu**, **Acquire Dictionary** ➔
- 2 **Select number** ➔ ➔ **Select dictionary** ➔
  - Existing dictionary is replaced.

#### Canceling Dictionary

- In , select dictionary ➔ ➔ **Cancel** ➔

#### Viewing Dictionary Information

- In , select dictionary ➔ ➔ **Info** ➔

### Advanced

- Deleting entries (P.2-15)



## Creating Phone Book Entries

Enter a name, phone number and mail address (enter at least one of these items) and classify the entry.

**1** ➔ **Phone** ➔ ➔ **Add New Entry** ➔

**2** **Last Name:** ➔ ➔ **Enter last name** ➔ ➔ **First Name:** ➔ ➔ **Enter first name** ➔

- Characters entered for names (reading for kanji) appear.

**3** **Add Phone Number:** ➔ ➔ **Enter phone number** ➔ ➔ **Select type** ➔

- To save additional phone numbers, repeat **3**.

**4** **Add Email Address:** ➔ ➔ **Enter mail address** ➔ ➔ **Select type** ➔

- To save additional mail addresses, repeat **4**.

**5** **Category:** ➔ ➔ **Select Category** ➔

Phone Book Entry Window

**6** ➔ ➔ **Save**

- Entry is saved to Phone Book.

### Incoming Calls while Creating Entry

- Contents are temporarily saved. End the call to return.

### Advanced

- Saving other information
- Changing vibration pattern
- Editing Phone Book entries
- Setting incoming mail ring time
- Renaming Categories
- Changing Category icons
- Changing Category Order (P.2-16 - 2-17)



## Personal Ringtone

Set tone for calls from saved numbers.

- 1 In Phone Book entry window, select item, e.g., **Tone-Voice Call:** ➔
- 2 **Assign Tone** ➔ ➔ **Select folder** ➔
- 3 **Select tone/file** ➔ ➔

## Saving Secret Entries

Hide Phone Book entries to require Handset Code for access.

- 1 In Phone Book entry window, **Secret:** ➔
- 2 **On** ➔ ➔

## Accessing Secret Entries

- ➔ ➔ **Unlock Temporarily** ➔   
➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔

## Customizing Response by Category

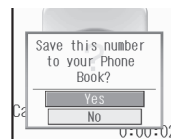
- 1 ➔ **Phone** ➔ ➔ **Set Category** ➔
- 2 **Select Category** ➔ ➔ **Select item** ➔
- 3 **Select item** ➔ ➔ **Select item, e.g., Assign Tone** ➔ ➔ **Customize responses** ➔
  - Customize responses in the same way as Phone Book entries.
  - Not available for USIM Card.

## Responses Set by Phone Book Entry

- Settings for each entry take priority.

## Saving Numbers After Calls

After a call, save number to Phone Book.



- 1 When confirmation appears, **Yes** ➔
- 2 **As New Entry** ➔ ➔ **Complete other fields** ➔

## Saving to an Existing Entry

- In ❷, **As New Detail** ➔ ➔ **Select entry** ➔ ➔ **Complete other fields** ➔



# Using Phone Book Entries

## Dialing via Phone Book

- 1 ➔ Select katakana row



Entry Search Window (By あかさたな)

- 2 Select entry ➔



- 3 Select phone number

- 4

## Placing Video Calls

After ➔ Video Call ➔

## Changing Search Method

- 1 In entry search window, ➔ Ph.Book Settings ➔

- 2 Sort Entries ➔

- 3 Select method ➔

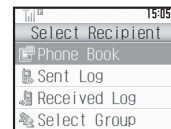
• Phone Book Search Methods:

By あかさたな	Shows entries with Readings that start with katakana in the specified row
By Category	Opens entries in the specified Category
By Reading	Shows all entries in Reading order (katakana, alphabetical then numerical)

Changing Search Method Temporarily  
[Entry Search Window] (press to toggle search methods)

## Opening from Other Functions

Example: Enter a recipient via Phone Book when sending a message.



Select Recipient Window

- 1 Phone Book ➔

• Entry search window opens.

- 2 Select entry ➔

- 3 Select phone number or mail address ➔

• Recipient is entered.

• Omit if only one number or address is saved.

## Advanced

- Changing view for entry search window
- Assigning images to Phone Book entries for incoming transmissions
- Messaging via Phone Book
- Deleting Phone Book entries
- Checking memory status
- Copying Phone Book entries (And more on P.2-16 - 2-17)

Text Entry	
■ Entry & Edit	
Using Character Codes	In a text entry window,  → <i>Character Code</i> →  → Enter four digits
Using Pager Code	In a text entry window,  → <i>Input/Conversion</i> →  → <i>Input Method</i> →  → <i>Pager Code</i> → • Return to text entry window and enter two digits.
Inserting line breaks	<i>At the End of Text</i> In a text entry window,
	<i>Mid-Entry</i> In a text entry window,  →  →  →
Inserting spaces	In a text entry window,
Using Keypad to enter words/phrases from suggestion list	In a text entry window,  → <i>Input/Conversion</i> →  → <i>Select Candidate</i> →  → <i>Enable 1-9</i> , 0, *, # →
Clearing entry log	In a text entry window,  → <i>Input/Conversion</i> →  → <i>Reset Log</i> →  → <i>Yes</i> →
Undo conversion or recover deleted characters	In a text entry window,  → <i>Undo/Recover</i> →
Inserting Phone Book entry items	In a text entry window,  → <i>Insert/Font Size</i> →  → <i>Phone Book</i> →  → <i>Select entry</i> →  → <i>Select item</i> →
Changing Font Size	In a text entry window,  → <i>Insert/Font Size</i> →  → <i>Font Size</i> →  → <i>Select size</i> →

## ■ Conversion

Disabling suggestions based on entered characters	In a text entry window,  → <i>Input/Conversion</i> →  → <i>Predictive</i> →  → <i>Off</i> →
Disabling suggestions based on entered words	In a text entry window,  → <i>Input/Conversion</i> →  → <i>Previous Usage</i> →  → <i>Off</i> →
Disabling emoticon/Pictogram suggestions based on entered words	In a text entry window,  → <i>Input/Conversion</i> →  → <i>EmoticonWordLink</i> →  → <i>Off</i> →
Lowering type priorities in suggestion list	In a text entry window,  → <i>Input/Conversion</i> →  → <i>Set Low Priority</i> →  → <i>Select type</i> →  →
Selecting a suggestion mode	In a text entry window,  → <i>Input/Conversion</i> →  → <i>Personal Mode</i> →  → <i>Select mode</i> →

## User Dictionary

Deleting entries	→ <i>Settings</i> →  → <i>Phone/Phone</i> →  → <i>User Dictionary</i> →  → <i>Saved Word List</i> →  → <i>Select word</i> →  → <i>Yes</i> →
------------------	---



## Phone Book

## ■ View Settings

Changing view for entry search window	→ <i>Phone</i> →  → <i>Ph.Book Settings</i> → → <i>View Settings</i> →  → <i>List Only</i> →
Assigning images to Phone Book entries for incoming transmissions	→ <i>Phone</i> →  → <i>Add New Entry</i> → → <i>Picture:</i> →  → See below
	<b>Assigning Images</b> <i>Assign Picture</i> →  → Select image →
	<b>Capturing Images</b> <i>Take Picture</i> →  → Frame image on Display →  →
Hiding confirmation after calls to/from unsaved numbers	→ <i>Phone</i> →  → <i>Ph.Book Settings</i> → → <i>New Number Prompt</i> →  → <i>Incoming Call or Outgoing Call</i> →  → <i>Off</i> →

## ■ Saving Entries

Press at the end to save entry. (At least a name, phone number or mail address must be entered.)

Saving other information	→ <i>Phone</i> →  → <i>Add New Entry</i> → → See below
	<b>Address</b> <i>Address:</i> →  → Select item →  → Complete field →  →
	<b>Office</b> <i>Office:</i> →  → Select item →  → Enter text →  →
	<b>Homepage</b> <i>Homepage:</i> →  → Enter URL →  → Select type →
	<b>Note</b> <i>Note:</i> →  → Enter text →
Changing vibration pattern	<b>Birthday</b> <i>Birthday:</i> →  → Enter date →
	→ <i>Phone</i> →  → <i>Add New Entry</i> →  → Select item, e.g., <i>Vibration-Message:</i> →  → <i>Switch On/Off</i> →  → Select option →  → <i>Vibration Pattern</i> →  → Select pattern →

## ■ Editing Entries &amp; Categories

Editing Phone Book entries	→ Select entry →  → <i>Edit</i> →  → Select item →  → <i>Edit</i> →  → • Edit Reading after editing names.
Setting incoming mail ring time	→ Select entry →  → <i>Edit</i> →  → <i>Tone-New Message:</i> →  → <i>Duration</i> →  → Enter time →  →

• Available for compatible ringtones.



Renaming Categories	➔ <i>Phone</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Set Category</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Select Category</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Edit Name</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Enter name</i> ➔
Changing Category icons	➔ <i>Phone</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Set Category</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Select Category</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Change Icon</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Select Pictogram</i> ➔
Changing Category Order	➔ <i>Phone</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Set Category</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Select Category</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Select target location</i> ➔ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>View for <i>By Category</i> Phone Book search changes accordingly.</li> </ul>

## ■ Using Entries

Messaging via Phone Book	➔ <i>Select entry</i> ➔  ➔ <i>See below</i> <b>Phone Numbers</b> <i>Select phone number</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Create Message</i> ➔  ➔ <i>S! Mail or SMS</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Complete message</i> ➔
	<b>Mail Addresses</b> <i>Select mail address</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Complete message</i> ➔
Placing international calls via Phone Book	➔ <i>Select entry</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Select phone number</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Int'l Call</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Select country</i> ➔  ➔

## ■ Managing Entries

Deleting Phone Book entries	<b>One Entry</b> ➔ <i>Select entry</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Delete</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Yes</i> ➔
	<b>All Entries</b> ➔ <i>Phone</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Manage Entries</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Delete All</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Select entry type</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Yes</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Enter Handset Code</i> ➔
Checking memory status	➔ <i>Phone</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Manage Entries</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Memory Status</i> ➔

### Copying Phone Book entries

#### One Entry (Handset → USIM Card)

➔ *Select entry* ➔ ➔ *Manage Entries* ➔ ➔ *Copy Entry to USIM* ➔ ➔ *Yes* ➔

#### One Entry (USIM Card → Handset)

➔ ➔ *Ph.Book Settings* ➔ ➔ *Select Phone Book* ➔ ➔ *USIM Memory* ➔ ➔ *Select entry* ➔ ➔ *Manage Entries* ➔ ➔ *Copy Entry to Phone* ➔

#### All Entries

➔ ➔ *Manage Entries* ➔ ➔ *Copy All* ➔ ➔ *Select method* ➔ ➔ *Yes* ➔ 

- If handset/USIM Card memory is low, some entries may not be copied.

### Editing Categories on USIM Card

➔ ➔ *Phone* ➔ ➔ *Set Category* ➔ ➔ ➔ *Change to USIM* ➔ ➔ *See below*

#### Renaming Categories

*Select Category* ➔ ➔ *Edit Name* ➔ ➔ *Enter name* ➔

#### Changing Order

*Select Category* ➔ ➔ *Select target location* ➔

#### Changing Icons

*Select Category* ➔ ➔ *Change Icon* ➔ ➔ *Select Pictogram* ➔

### Changing default storage media for new entries

➔ *Phone* ➔ ➔ *Ph.Book Settings* ➔ ➔ *Save New Entry* ➔ ➔ *USIM Memory or Ask Each Time* ➔

### Switching reference Phone Book

➔ *Phone* ➔ ➔ *Ph.Book Settings* ➔ ➔ *Select Phone Book* ➔ ➔ *USIM Memory or Both* ➔



### Phone Book



#### Assigned images do not appear for incoming transmissions

- Source files may be deleted or moved to Memory Card; reassign files.
- When using copy protected files, etc., confirm that source file license/usage period has not expired.
- Images do not appear if corresponding Phone Book entry is set to Secret.
- Images may not appear when another function is active, etc.



#### Handset does not ring for incoming transmissions as set

- Source files may be deleted; reassign files.
- When using copy protected files, etc., confirm that source file license/usage period has not expired.
- Ringtone/ringvideo settings are disabled if corresponding Phone Book entry is set to Secret.
- Memory Card with source files may be removed; reinsert the card to restore settings.



#### Cannot enter 16 characters for Category names

- Character entry limit for Category names may be lower depending on the USIM Card in use.



<b>Emergency Calls .....</b>	<b>3-2</b>
<b>Voice Calling .....</b>	<b>3-3</b>
<b>Video Calling .....</b>	<b>3-5</b>
<b>Speed Dial.....</b>	<b>3-6</b>

<b>Call Log .....</b>	<b>3-7</b>
<b>Call Time.....</b>	<b>3-8</b>
<b>Optional Services .....</b>	<b>3-9</b>
<b>Additional Functions .....</b>	<b>3-11</b>
<b>Troubleshooting.....</b>	<b>3-17</b>

# 3

## Calling



## Emergency Calls

Your location is automatically reported to the corresponding agency (police, etc.) when you place emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) with SoftBank 3G handsets. (Emergency Location Report)

840SH reports Location Information based on positioning signals from radio stations.

- Registration/transmission fees do not apply.
- Positioning accuracy is affected by location/signal conditions. Always provide your location and purpose on the phone.
- Location Information is not reported when emergency calls are placed without Caller ID (such as when the number is prefixed with **184**). However, the corresponding agency may obtain your Location Information in a life threatening situation.

### Handset Restrictions & Emergency Calls

Emergency calls are possible even while some handset restrictions are active.

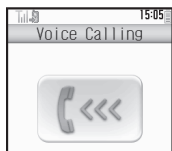
Active Restriction	Emergency Calls
Function Lock	Possible
Bar Outgoing Calls	
Offline Mode	Restricted
Keypad Lock	
PIN Entry	



## Voice Calling

### Answering a Voice Call

Incoming Call window opens for a call.




Incoming Voice Call Window

#### 1 to accept the call


- Call connects.

#### 2 ➔ Call ends

#### Muting Ringer Temporarily

When a call arrives, 

#### Earpiece Volume




During a call, 

#### After Calls to/from Unsaved Numbers

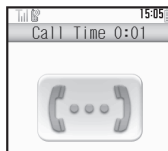
- Save to Phone Book confirmation appears.

### Placing a Voice Call

#### 1 Enter phone number with area code

- To correct entry, use  to place cursor under the digit and press . To delete the digits above and after the cursor, Long Press .

#### 2



- Wait for receiver to accept the call.

#### 3 ➔ Call ends

### Placing an International Call

Handset is designed exclusively for use in Japan (not made for use abroad).

#### 1 Enter phone number with area code ➔

#### 2 Int'l Call ➔

#### 3 Select country ➔ ➔











- Handset dials the number.

#### 4 ➔ Call ends

#### Calling Unlisted Countries

In , Enter Code ➔  ➔ Enter country code ➔  ➔ 

### Advanced

-   Rejecting calls  Placing calls on hold  Answering with Headphones (P.3-11)
-  Adjusting Earpiece Volume  Sending/blocking Caller ID (P.3-12)
-  Muting Microphone  Recording caller voice  Opening messages (And more on P.3-12 - 3-13)
-  Answering calls automatically when using Headphones (P.3-16)



## Answer Phone

Record caller messages on handset. Answer Phone cannot be used when handset is off or out-of-range. Use Voicemail to record caller messages when Answer Phone is not available.

### 1 (Long)

- Answer Phone is set.

### Canceling Answer Phone



(Long)

### Answering Calls while Recording



- No message will be recorded.

## Playing Messages

### 1








### 2 Select record ➡

- Playback stops automatically at the end of message.

### Deleting All Records

After 1,  ➡ Delete All ➡  ➡ Enter  
Handset Code ➡  ➡ Yes ➡ 

## Playback Operations

Volume Control	
Replay/Skip Backward	
Stop	
Skip Forward	
Delete	 ➡ Yes ➡ 
Loudspeaker On/Off	

## Advanced

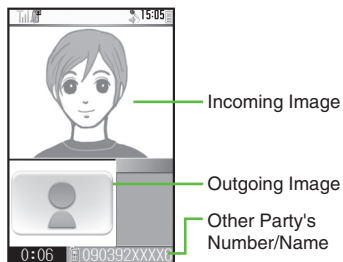
-  ● Recording caller messages ● Changing ring time ● Sampling outgoing message ● Muting Earpiece (P.3-11)
- Placing calls by entering country code directly ● Adding/changing/deleting country codes (And more on P.3-12)



## Video Calling

View the other party's image or send an Outgoing Image to compatible handsets. Handle Video Calls like Voice Calls. This page describes functions/operations unique to Video Call.

### Window Description



### Important Video Call Usage Notes

- If both parties are using handset models without internal cameras, Video Call cannot be used as intended.
- If both parties are not using the same Video Call system, call may be interrupted. (Video Call charges apply.)

### Advanced

- Answering Video Calls automatically (And more on P.3-11)
- Adjusting Outgoing Image brightness ● Disabling touch tone sending (P.3-13)
- Sending camera image when initiating Video Calls ● Disabling Loudspeaker for Video Calls ● Muting Microphone when initiating Video Calls (And more on P.3-16)

### Answering a Video Call

Incoming Call window opens for a call.



Incoming Video Call Window

- 1 **to accept the call**
  - Alternative Image is sent. (Video Call charges apply to the caller.)

- 2 **Call ends**

### Answering with Camera Image

[Incoming Video Call Window]

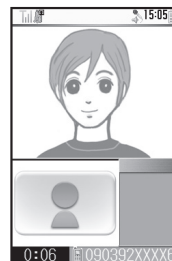
No

### Engaged Video Call Operations

<b>Toggle View</b>	
<b>Toggle Outgoing Image</b>	
<b>Open Help</b>	<b>Help</b>

### Placing a Video Call

- 1 Enter phone number
- 2 **Video Call**



- Image appears when call is accepted.

- 3 **Call ends**



## Speed Dial

### Saving Phone Numbers

Save phone numbers to Speed Dial/Mail list for easy dialing.

- 1 ➔ **Phone** ➔
- 2 **Speed Dial/Mail** ➔
- 3 **<Empty>** ➔ ➔ **Select entry** ➔
- 4 **Select phone number** ➔



- Select mail address prompt appears. To save mail address for easy messaging, select one and press . (Omit .)

- 5 **Do not Assign** ➔

### 6 ➔ Saved

- To save additional phone numbers, repeat - .

#### Using Headphones for Speed Dial

- Save a phone number to .

#### Canceling Speed Dial Entries

In , select entry ➔ ➔ **Remove Selected or Remove All** ➔ ➔ **Yes** ➔

- Omit entry selection step when canceling all entries.

### Using Speed Dial

- 1 - (entry number)

- 2

#### Placing Video Calls

In , ➔ **Speed Video** ➔

#### Using Headphones

- In Standby, Long Press Call Button until a double beep sounds; handset dials the number saved in . To end the call, Long Press Call Button until a beep sounds.




# Call Log

Open recent dialed/received call records.

1 



- All Calls opens; press  to open Dialed Numbers, Dialed Ranking and then Received Calls.

2 Select record ➡ 

**When the Same Number is Dialed More than Once Using the Same Call Option**

- Only the last record appears.

## Advanced

-   Dialing from records (And more on **P.3-13**)



## Call Time

### Call Time




Check estimated time of the most recent call and all calls.

**1**  ➔ **Settings** ➔  ➔   
**Call**


**2** **Call Time/Data Counter** ➔ 

**3** **Call Timers** ➔ 

**4** **Dialed Calls or Received Calls** ➔ 

**Resetting Dialed & Received Call Timers**  
After , **Clear Timers** ➔  ➔ **Enter**  
**Handset Code** ➔  ➔ **Yes** ➔ 

### Advanced

 ● Setting handset to beep during Voice Calls ● Checking accumulated data transmission volume ● Resetting Data Counter (And more on **P.3-14**)



## Optional Services

Call Forwarding and Voicemail can only be set simultaneously when Call Forwarding is set to Video Calls.

<b>Call Forwarding</b>	Automatically divert all or all unanswered incoming calls to another preset phone number
<b>Voicemail</b>	Redirect all or unanswered calls to Voicemail Center; access messages from handset/touch tone phones
<b>Call Waiting*</b>	Answer incoming calls or open another line during a call
<b>Group Calling*</b>	Switch between open lines or connect multiple lines at once for teleconferencing
<b>Caller ID</b>	Show or hide your own number when placing calls
<b>Call Barring</b>	Restrict incoming/outgoing calls depending on conditions

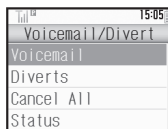
\*A separate contract is required.

### Initiating Call Forwarding

Follow these steps to divert calls to a phone number saved in Phone Book after selected ring time (**No Answer** set):

1 ➔ **Settings** ➔ ➔ ➔

2 **Voicemail/Divert** ➔



Voicemail/Divert Menu

3 **Diverts** ➔

4 **Select call type** ➔

5 **No Answer** ➔

6 **Phone Book** ➔ ➔ **Select entry** ➔

7 **Select phone number** ➔   
 • Omit 7 if only one number is saved.

8

9 **Select ring time** ➔

**Diverting Calls without Handset Response**  
 In 8, **Always** ➔ ➔ 8 - 8

**Entering Forwarding Number Directly**  
 In 8, **Enter Number** ➔ ➔ Enter phone number ➔ ➔ Select ring time ➔

3

Calling

### Advanced

Checking service status (P.3-14)



## Initiating Voicemail

Follow these steps to divert calls to Voicemail Center after selected ring time (**No Answer** set):

- 1 In Voicemail/Divert menu, **Voicemail** ➔ ➔ **Activate** ➔
- 2 **No Answer** ➔ ➔ **Select ring time** ➔

Diverting Calls without Handset Response  
In , **Always** ➔

## Missed Call Notification

Activate this function for records of calls missed while handset is off/out-of-range and Voicemail is active.

- 1 ➔ **Settings** ➔ ➔
  - 2 **Missed Calls** ➔ ➔
- Follow the voice guidance for further operations.

## Playing Messages

- 1 In Voicemail/Divert menu, **Voicemail** ➔
  - 2 **Call Voicemail** ➔
- Follow the voice guidance for further operations.

Deleting New Voicemail Message Indicator  
In , **Delete Icon** ➔ ➔ **Yes** ➔

## Canceling Call Forwarding/Voicemail

- 1 In Voicemail/Divert menu, **Cancel All** ➔
- 2 **Yes** ➔

## Advanced

- Activating Call Waiting ● Talking on multiple lines simultaneously ● Rejecting calls by number ● Setting/canceling outgoing call restriction ● Setting/canceling incoming call restriction (And more on P.3-14 - 3-16)



## Receiving a Call

## ■ Handling Incoming Calls

Rejecting calls	<b>Voice Call</b> When a call arrives,  ➔ <b>Reject</b> ➔
	<b>Video Call</b> When a call arrives,
Placing calls on hold	When a call arrives, • Press  to answer the call on hold.
Answering with Headphones	When a call arrives, <b>Long Press Call Button</b> • To end the call, Long Press Call Button.

## ■ Answer Phone

Recording caller messages	When a Voice Call arrives,  ➔ <b>Record Message</b> ➔
Changing ring time	➔ <b>Settings</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Call</b> ➔ <b>Answer Phone</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Answer Time</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Enter time</b> ➔
Sampling outgoing message	➔ <b>Settings</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Call</b> ➔ <b>Answer Phone</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Outgoing Message</b> ➔ • Press  to stop playback.
Muting Earpiece	➔ <b>Settings</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Call</b> ➔ <b>Answer Phone</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Volume</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Silent</b> ➔

## ■ Remote Monitor (Video Call)

Answering Video Calls automatically	<b>Start Here</b> ➔ <b>Settings</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Call</b> ➔ <b>Video Call</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Remote Monitor</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Enter Handset Code</b> ➔  ➔ <b>See below</b>
	<b>Saving Numbers from Phone Book</b> <b>Auto Answer List</b> ➔  ➔ <b>&lt;Empty&gt;</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Change</b> ➔  ➔ <b>From Phone Book</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Select entry</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Select phone number</b> ➔ • To enter a phone number directly, select <b>&lt;Empty&gt;</b> and press .
	<b>Saving Numbers from Call Log</b> <b>Auto Answer List</b> ➔  ➔ <b>&lt;Empty&gt;</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Change</b> ➔  ➔ <b>From Call Log</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Select record</b> ➔
Editing Auto Answer List	<b>Activating Remote Monitor</b> <b>Switch On/Off</b> ➔  ➔ <b>On</b> ➔  ➔ • When Remote Monitor is active, auto answer tone sounds even in Manner mode; cancel afterward. • Remote Monitor is effective only when handset is open.
	<b>Start Here</b> ➔ <b>Settings</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Call</b> ➔ <b>Video Call</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Remote Monitor</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Enter Handset Code</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Auto Answer List</b> ➔  ➔ <b>See below</b>
Changing ring time	<b>Editing Numbers</b> <b>Select entry</b> ➔  ➔  ➔ <b>Edit</b> ➔
	<b>Deleting Entries</b> <b>Select entry</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Delete</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Yes</b> ➔
Changing ring time	➔ <b>Settings</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Call</b> ➔ <b>Video Call</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Remote Monitor</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Enter Handset Code</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Answer Time</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Enter time</b> ➔



## Placing a Call

## Basic Operations

Adjusting Earpiece Volume	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Settings</b> → <b>In Sound/Display menu, Earpiece Volume</b> → <b>Adjust level</b></li> </ul>
Sending/blocking Caller ID	After phone number entry, <b>Hide My ID</b> or <b>Show My ID</b>

## International Calls

Placing calls by entering country code directly	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>(+ appears)</b> → <b>Enter country code</b> → <b>Enter phone number with area code</b></li> <li>• Omit the first 0 of the area code except when calling Italy or some other countries.</li> <li>• Pressing <b>+</b> during a call does not enter +.</li> </ul>
Saving frequently used international prefix	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Settings</b> → <b>Call</b> → <b>Int'l Calling</b> → <b>Int'l Prefix</b> → <b>Enter Handset Code</b> → <b>Enter prefix</b></li> </ul>
Adding/changing/deleting country codes	<p><b>Start Here</b> → <b>Settings</b> → <b>Call</b> → <b>Int'l Calling</b> → <b>Country Codes</b> → <b>See below</b></p> <p><b>Adding</b>  <b>&lt;Empty&gt;</b> → <b>Enter name</b> → <b>Enter country code</b></p> <p><b>Changing</b>  <b>Select country</b> → <b>Change</b> → <b>Enter name</b> → <b>Enter country code</b></p> <p><b>Deleting</b>  <b>Select country</b> → <b>Delete</b> → <b>Yes</b></p>

## During a Call

## Voice Call &amp; Video Call

Muting Microphone	<b>Voice Call</b> During a call, <b>(press again to cancel)</b>
Activating/canceling Loudspeaker	<b>Video Call</b> During a call, <b>Mute</b> → <b>To cancel, select Unmute.</b>
Opening Phone Book	<b>Activating Loudspeaker for Voice Call</b> During a call, <b>While message appears,</b> <b>To cancel, press .</b> <b>Ccanceling Loudspeaker for Video Call</b> During a call, <b>(press again to activate)</b>
Saving Phone Book entries	During a call, <b>Phone Book</b> → <b>Select entry</b> → <b>Press</b> twice to return to call window.
Placing calls on hold	During a call, <b>Hold</b> → <b>Subscription to Call Waiting or Group Calling is required to place Voice Calls on hold.</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To resume Voice Calls, press <b>, select Retrieve</b> and press <b>.</b></li> <li>• To resume Video Calls, press <b>.</b></li> </ul>



## ■ Voice Call Only

Recording caller voice	During a call,  → <b>Record Caller Voice</b> → → <b>Recording starts</b> →  → <b>Recording ends</b> • To play recorded messages, see P.3-4 "Playing Messages."
Opening messages	During a call,  → <b>Messaging</b> →  → <b>Select Messaging folder</b> →  → <b>Select folder</b> → → <b>Select message</b> → • Press  three times to return to call window.
Creating messages	During a call,  → <b>Messaging</b> →  → <b>Create Message or Create New SMS</b> →  → <b>Complete message</b> →
Sending touch tones via Phone Book	During a call,  → <b>Phone Book</b> →  → <b>Select entry</b> →  → <b>Send Push Tone</b> →  → <b>Select phone number</b> →

## ■ Video Call Only

Adjusting Outgoing Image brightness	During a call,  → <b>Exposure</b> →  → <b>Adjust level</b> → • Alternative Image brightness is fixed.
Disabling touch tone sending	During a call,  → <b>Disable DTMF</b> →

## Call Log

Dialing from records	<b>Calling Dialed Numbers (Redial)</b> → <b>Select record</b> → • To place Video Calls, press  instead of , then select <b>Video Call</b> and press .
Sending messages from records	<b>Calling from Received Call Records</b> → <b>Select record</b> → • To place Video Calls, press  instead of , then select <b>Video Call</b> and press .
Saving Phone Book entries from records	→ <b>Select record</b> →  → <b>Create Message</b> →  → <b>S! Mail or SMS</b> →  → <b>Complete message</b> →
Deleting records	→ <b>Select record</b> →  → <b>Save to Phone Book</b> →  → <b>As New Entry</b> →  → <b>Complete other fields</b> → • To add to an existing entry, select <b>As New Detail</b> .
Hiding Dialed Ranking	<b>One Record</b> → <b>Select record</b> →  → <b>Delete</b> →  → <b>Yes</b> → <b>All Records</b> →  → <b>Delete All</b> →  → <b>Enter Handset Code</b> →  → <b>Yes</b> →
Excluding rejected incoming calls	→ <b>Phone</b> →  → <b>Call Log Settings</b> →  → <b>Set Dialed Ranking</b> →  → <b>Hide Dialed Ranking</b> → • Handset Code is required to re-select <b>Show Dialed Ranking</b> .
	→ <b>Phone</b> →  → <b>Call Log Settings</b> →  → <b>Record on Call Log</b> →  → <b>Do not Record</b> →  → <b>Enter Handset Code</b> →



## Call Time &amp; Data Communication

## ■ Call Time

Setting handset to beep during Voice Calls	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Settings → Call → Call Time/ Data Counter → Minute Minder → On</li> </ul>
Hiding Call Time during calls	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Settings → Call → Call Time/ Data Counter → Call Time Counter → Off</li> </ul>
Resetting Call Timers	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Settings → Call → Call Time/ Data Counter → Call Timers → Clear Timers → Enter Handset Code → Yes</li> </ul>

## ■ Data Communication

Checking accumulated data transmission volume	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Settings → Call → Call Time/ Data Counter → Data Counter → All Data</li> </ul>
Resetting Data Counter	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Settings → Call → Call Time/ Data Counter → Data Counter → Clear Counter → Yes</li> </ul>

## Optional Services

## ■ All Services

Checking service status	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Settings → Call → Select service → Status</li> <li>Available for <b>Voice Mail/Divert</b>, <b>Show My Number</b>, <b>Call Barring</b> and <b>Call Waiting</b>.</li> <li>For <b>Call Barring</b>, select restriction and press.</li> </ul>
-------------------------	--

## ■ Call Waiting (Contract Required)

Activating Call Waiting	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Settings → Call → Call Waiting → On</li> </ul>
Placing Line 1 on hold to answer Line 2	<p>A tone sounds during a Voice Call</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press to switch between lines.</li> <li>Press to end active line and re-engage the party on hold.</li> </ul>

## ■ Group Calling (Contract Required)

Opening another line during a call	<p>During a Voice Call, enter phone number</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Long Press to select a number from Call Log records.</li> </ul>
Switching between open lines (Swap Calls)	<p>During a Voice Call,</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press to switch between lines.</li> </ul>
Talking on multiple lines simultaneously	<p>While switching between lines,</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Group Calling → Conference All</li> </ul>



Switching to private conversation during Group Calling	During a Voice Call, select number/name →  → <b>Private</b> →
<b>■ Call Barring</b>	
Rejecting calls by number	<p> → <b>Settings</b> →  → <b>Call Barring</b> →  → <b>Reject Numbers</b> →  → See below</p> <p><b>Saving Numbers</b>  <b>Set Reject Number</b> →  → <b>&lt;Empty&gt;</b> →  → <b>Enter phone number</b> → </p> <p><b>Activating Rejection</b>  <b>Switch On/Off</b> →  → <b>On</b> → </p>
Rejecting calls without designating numbers	<p> → <b>Settings</b> →  → <b>Call Barring</b> →  → <b>Reject Numbers</b> →  → See below</p> <p><b>Calls from Unsaved Numbers</b>  <b>Except Phonebook Entries</b> →  → <b>On</b> → </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If saved numbers contain <b>P</b> (pause), calls from the number before <b>P</b> are rejected.</li> </ul> <p><b>Withheld Caller ID Calls</b>  <b>Withheld</b> →  → <b>On</b> → </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Calls from public phones or with undisplayable Caller ID are also rejected.</li> </ul>
Changing Network Password	→ <b>Settings</b> →  → <b>Call Barring</b> →  → <b>Change NW Password</b> →  → <b>Enter current Network Password</b> →  → <b>Enter new Network Password</b> →  → <b>Re-enter new Network Password</b> →

Designating numbers to reject from saved information

→ **Settings** → → **Call Barring** → → **Reject Numbers** → → **Specified Numbers** → → **Set Reject Number** → → **<Empty>** → → See below

**From Phone Book**

**Ph.Book List** → → **Select entry** →

**From Call Log Records**

**From Call Log** → → **Select record** →

Editing Reject Numbers list

→ **Settings** → → **Call Barring** → → **Reject Numbers** → → **Specified Numbers** → → **Set Reject Number** → → See below

**Editing Numbers**

**Select number/name** → → **Edit** →

**Deleting Numbers**

**Select number/name** → → **Delete** → → **Yes** →

Setting/canceling outgoing call restriction

→ **Settings** → → **Call Barring** → → **Bar Outgoing Calls** → → See below

**Setting Restriction**

**Select restriction** → → **On** → → **Enter Network Password** →

• Outgoing SMS messages are also restricted.

• Following restrictions are available:

- All Outgoing Calls: Restrict all non-emergency calls
- Bar Int'l Call\*: Restrict all international calls
- Local & Home Only\*: Restrict all international calls except to Japan

\*Calls cannot be placed when outside Japan.  
(840SH does not support international roaming.)

**Canceling All Restrictions**

**Cancel All** → → **Enter Network Password** →



Setting/canceling incoming call restriction	<p>Start Here → Settings → Call → Call Barring → Bar Incoming Calls → See below</p> <p><b>Setting Restriction</b></p> <p>Select restriction → On → Enter Network Password</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Incoming SMS messages are also restricted.</li> <li>Following restrictions are available:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>All Incoming Calls: Reject all calls</li> <li>Bar if Abroad*: Reject calls when outside Japan</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>*Even if <b>Off</b>, 840SH will not receive calls abroad. (840SH does not support international roaming.)</p> <p><b>Canceling All Restrictions</b></p> <p>Cancel All → Enter Network Password</p>
---	---

## Caller ID

Showing/hiding Caller ID	<p>Settings → Call → Show My Number → On or Off</p>
--------------------------	---

## Settings

## Voice Call

Answering calls automatically when using Headphones	<p>Start Here → Settings → Call → Auto Answer → Enter Handset Code → See below</p> <p><b>Activating Auto Answer</b></p> <p>Switch On/Off → On</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When Auto Answer is active, Auto Answer tone sounds after ringtone even in Manner mode; cancel afterward.</li> </ul> <p><b>Changing Ring Time</b></p> <p>Answer Time → Enter time</p>
---	--

## Video Call

Sending camera image when initiating Video Calls	<p>Settings → Call → Video Call → Camera Picture → Default Image → External Camera</p>
Disabling Loudspeaker for Video Calls	<p>Settings → Call → Video Call → Loudspeaker → Off</p>
Muting Microphone when initiating Video Calls	<p>Settings → Call → Video Call → Mute Microphone → On</p>
Changing Alternative Image that is sent when initiating Video Calls	<p>Settings → Call → Video Call → Camera Picture → Alternative Image → Select folder → Select file</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Omit file selection step when using Customized Screen image.</li> </ul>
Changing quality of Incoming/Outgoing Images	<p>Settings → Call → Video Call → Incoming Picture or Outgoing Picture → Select quality</p>
Setting image that is sent while call is on hold	<p>Settings → Call → Video Call → Hold Guidance Pict → Select folder → Select file</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Omit file selection step when using Customized Screen image.</li> </ul>
Setting Backlight status	<p>Settings → Call → Video Call → Backlight → Select option</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Selecting <b>Normal Setting</b> applies Display Backlight settings.</li> </ul>



### Receiving a Call

#### ? Cannot use Answer Phone or Caller Voice

- Answer Phone and Caller Voice are disabled when less than 12 seconds remain or 20 messages are recorded. Delete messages.
- Answer Phone and Caller Voice are not available for Video Calls.

### Placing a Call

#### ? Cannot place call via Speed Dial

- Speed Dial is not available when Phone Book access is restricted by Application Lock.

#### ? Cannot place call

- Cancel Keypad Lock, Function Lock and Offline Mode, if active.

#### ? Call won't connect

- Did you include the area code or the first 0? Dial the number including the area code or 0.
- Handset may be out-of-range (*out* appears). Move to a place where signal is strong and retry.

### During a Call

#### ? Outgoing Image is distorted during Video Calls

- Rapid motion can make images appear choppy or distorted.

#### ? Camera image switches to Alternative Image during Video Calls

- Prolonged camera use may cause camera area to heat up, resulting in automatic shutdown; wait a while and retry.

#### ? Conversation is hampered

- Conversations may be hampered by ambient noise.
- Check Earpiece Volume when using Loudspeaker. Increasing Earpiece Volume may cause feedback/interference.

#### ? Call is choppy or cut off

- Network signal may be weak. Move to a place where signal is strong and retry.
- Battery may need to be charged or replaced. Charge battery or install a charged battery.

#### ? Clicking noise is heard during call

- Handset may be moving into another service area. Noise is heard when Network signal switches. This is normal.

#### ? Cannot hear other party's voice

- Earpiece Volume may be low. Increase Earpiece Volume (P.3-3).



## Other



### Call Time on Display seems incorrect

- Ring time for incoming or outgoing calls is not counted. (On hold time is counted.)



### Cannot save phone number for Call Forwarding

- Does the number start with **1, 00, 0120** or **0990**? Public service numbers, international call numbers starting with 00, toll-free numbers and fee-based service numbers cannot be saved.



<b>Messaging .....</b>	<b>4-2</b>
Basics .....	4-2
Customizing Handset Address .....	4-3
<b>Sending Messages.....</b>	<b>4-4</b>
Sending S! Mail .....	4-4
Sending SMS.....	4-7
<b>Incoming Messages.....</b>	<b>4-8</b>
Opening & Replying.....	4-8

<b>Handling Messages .....</b>	<b>4-10</b>
Managing & Using Messages.....	4-10
Sorting Messages .....	4-12
<b>Mail Groups .....</b>	<b>4-13</b>
Creating Groups for Broadcast Mail ....	4-13
<b>Additional Functions .....</b>	<b>4-14</b>
<b>Troubleshooting.....</b>	<b>4-28</b>

# 4

## Messaging



# Basics

Use the following messaging services.

## SMS

Exchange up to 160 alphanumerics with SoftBank handsets.

## S! Mail

Exchange up to 30,000 characters with e-mail compatible handsets, PCs, etc.; attach media files, etc.

Send Graphic Mail; set Feeling Setting in subject field when messaging SoftBank handsets.

## Available Entry Items

	Recipient	Subject	Message	Attachment
SMS	Available*	N/A	Available	N/A
S! Mail	Available	Available	Available	Available

\*SoftBank handset numbers only.

- A separate contract is required to use S! Mail and receive e-mail from PCs, etc.
- For more information, see SoftBank Mobile Website (P.14-21).

## Auto Retry Function

If recipient's handset is off/out-of-range, a sent message is saved in Server Mail Box and delivery attempted at regular intervals. (Undeliverable messages are deleted.)

## Auto Resend

When Auto Resend is active, handset makes up to two attempts to send unsent messages automatically. Cancel to disable (P.4-24).



# Customizing Handset Address

Change alphanumerics before @ of the default handset mail address.

For more information, see SoftBank Mobile Website (P.14-21).

## Changing Address

1 ➡ **Settings** ➡

2 **Address Settings** ➡

- Handset connects to the Internet. Select **English** and press , then follow onscreen instructions.

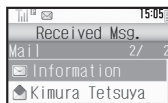
## Saving Address

When handset address is changed, SoftBank Mobile sends new address confirmation via S! Mail.



To save new address to My Details, follow these steps. (New address is effective even if not saved.)

1 **Message** ➡



2 **Information** ➡



3 **Yes** ➡



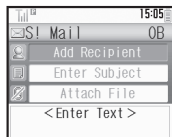
4



## Sending S! Mail

Follow these steps to send S! Mail to a number/address saved in Phone Book:

1  ➔ **Create Message** ➔ 





S! Mail Composition Window

2 **Select recipient field** ➔ 

3 **Phone Book** ➔ 

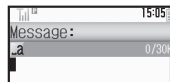
4 **Select entry** ➔ 

5 **Select number or mail address** ➔ 

- Omit  if only one number or address is saved.
- When a mail address is entered, do not use single-byte katakana in message text or subject.

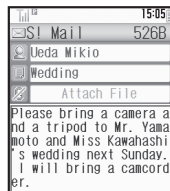
6 **Select subject field** ➔  ➔ **Enter subject** ➔ 

7 **Select message text field** ➔ 




Text Entry Window

8 **Enter message** ➔ 



S! Mail Composition Window



9  ➔ **Transmission starts**

- To cancel, press  during transmission.


### Incoming Calls while Creating Message

- Content is saved temporarily. End the call to return.


### Previewing Outgoing Message

After  ➔ **Preview Message** ➔ 

### Pictogram Entry

- In Pictogram List, press  to toggle Cross-Carrier Pictograms and all Pictograms.
- Pictogram appearance may differ by carrier.

## Advanced

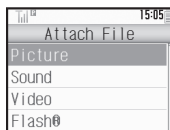
-  Using other recipient entry methods
- Adding recipients
- Inserting signature automatically
- Converting mail type (SMS/S! Mail) (And more on **P.4-14**)
- Saving without sending
- Requesting delivery confirmation
- Designating/editing reply-to address (And more on **P.4-15 - 4-16**)
- Requesting Delivery Report for all messages
- Disabling automatic resend of unsent messages
- Hiding progress bar while sending messages (And more on **P.4-24**)



## Attaching Files

Send attachments to compatible handsets.  
Follow these steps to attach images to S! Mail:

- 1 In S! Mail Composition window after composing message, select attachment field ➡



- 2 **Picture** ➡ ➡ **Select folder** ➡

- 3 **Select file** ➡



Attach File Window

- When a size list appears, select attachment size and press .

- 4 ➡ **Transmission starts**

### Attaching Non-Image Files

- In 2, select a folder other than **Picture** and press , then select a file.

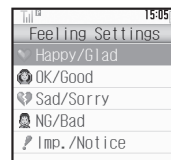
### Attaching Multiple Files

After 3, **Attach (1)** ➡ ➡ **Attach File** ➡ ➡ **From 2**

- **X** in **Attach (X)** indicates the number of attached files.

## Sending Feeling Mail

- 1 In S! Mail Composition window after composing message, ➡ **Feeling Settings** ➡



- 2 Select category, e.g., **Happy/Glad** ➡

- 3 Select item, e.g., **I Love You** ➡



- 4 ➡ **Transmission starts**

### Canceling Feeling Mail

[S! Mail Composition Window] Select subject field ➡ ➡ ➡ **Select Pictogram**, e.g., ➡

## Advanced

- Changing attached image size
- Set Auto Play File (And more on P.4-16)
- Enabling image auto-resize
- Enabling/disabling image auto-open or sound auto-play
- Attaching captured/recorded files unsaved (P.4-26)



## Sending Graphic Mail

Follow these steps to:

- Change font size and background color
- Insert images and My Pictograms
- Scroll text

4

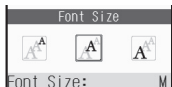
Messaging

## 1 In text entry window, (Long)

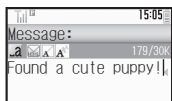


Graphic Mail Window

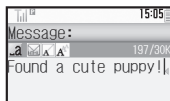
## 2 SIZE →



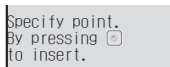
## 3 Select size → Enter text



## 4 → BG → Select color →



## 5 → IMAGE → Select folder → Select file →



## 6 Select target location →

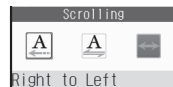
## 7 → MY PICT → Select file →



## 8 → EFFECT →



## 9 Scrolling →



## 10 Select direction → Enter text

## 11 → Transmission starts

## Canceling Last Action

[Graphic Mail Window] UNDO →

## Canceling All Graphic Mail Settings

[Graphic Mail Window] CANCEL →

→ Yes →

## Saving as Templates

After → Save as

Template → Enter name →

→ Save here →

■ Only the message text is saved.

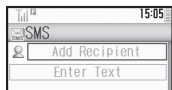
## Advanced

- Creating Graphic Mail from templates
- Changing text color, size & effect
- Changing text color
- Inserting background sound
- Inserting Flash® file
- Inserting horizontal line
- Flashing text
- Aligning text (left/right/center) (And more on P.4-16 - 4-17)

# Sending SMS

Follow these steps to send SMS to a number saved in Phone Book:

1 ➔ **Create New SMS** ➔



SMS Composition Window

2 ➔ **Select recipient field** ➔

3 **Phone Book** ➔

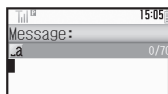
4 **Select entry** ➔

5 **Select number** ➔



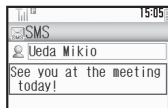
- Omit 5 if only one number is saved.

6 **Select message text field** ➔



Text Entry Window

7 **Enter message** ➔



SMS Composition Window

8 ➔ **Transmission starts**

## Incoming Calls while Creating Message

- Content is saved temporarily. End the call to return.

## When Message Text Exceeds Limit

- A confirmation appears. To convert SMS to S! Mail, follow these steps:

**Yes** ➔

## Advanced

- Using other recipient entry methods
- Adding recipients
- Using Speed Dial/Mail list
- Converting mail type (SMS/S! Mail) (And more on P.4-14)
- Saving without sending
- Requesting delivery confirmation
- Changing Server sent message storage limit (And more on P.4-15 - 4-16)
- Changing Server sent message storage limit
- Changing SMS Server number
- Changing character encoding for composing messages (P.4-27)



## Opening & Replying

### Opening New Messages

Information window opens for new mail.



#### Important Message Retrieval Notes

- By default, complete messages including attachments are retrieved; transmission fees apply depending on subscribed price plan.
- To retrieve only the initial portion of message text automatically, set Message DL to **Manual**; retrieve complete message manually as needed.

#### Delivery Report

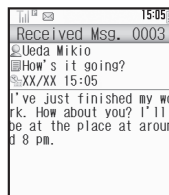
- Information window opens for Delivery Report. Follow these steps to open it:  
**Delivery Report** ➔ ➔ **Select message with report** ➔ ➔

### 1 Message ➔



Message List

### 2 Select message ➔



Message Window

### Receiving Feeling Mail

- Small Light, Vibration and ringtone respond according to settings.

### Attached Images

- Attached images open automatically.

### Messages with Quiz

#### Enter or select answer ➔

- Message cannot be opened until the correct answer is entered or selected.

### Animation View

- When a specific Pictogram is entered as the first character of subject or included in message text, corresponding animation appears in message window background.

### Mail Notice

- When Message DL is not set to **Auto**, Server sends initial portion of message text in each of the following cases:
  - The message was sent to multiple recipients
  - Files are attached to the message

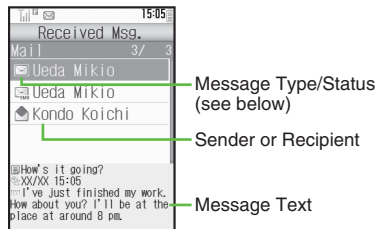
### Advanced

- Accessing new mail out of Standby ● Retrieving new S! Mail manually ● Viewing new messages on External Display (And more on **P.4-17 - 4-18**)
- Muting ringer, etc. for messages sorted into Secret folders ● Retrieving complete S! Mail messages manually ● Retrieving specified messages (And more on **P.4-25 - 4-26**)



## Window Description

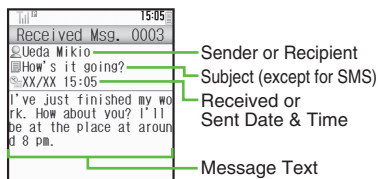
## Message List



## Message Type/Status

	Unread		Mail Notice (remaining portion exists)
	Read		Unread Delivery Report
	Sent		Attachments
	Failed		Protected
	Replied		Priority (High)
	Forwarded		Priority (Low)
	Send Reservation set		USIM Card SMS

## Message Window



Press to open next (newer) message, or to open previous (older) one.

## Changing Font Size

[Message Window] (Long) to enlarge or (Long) to reduce

## Replying to Messages

- In message window,**
  - Original message text is quoted (except for SMS and Graphic Mail).
- Complete message**

## Replying to Messages Addressed to Multiple Recipients

After ①, **To Sender or Reply All**

②

## Auto Reply

- Handset sends a reply automatically when receiving messages from saved numbers or addresses in specified mode (Manner mode, etc.).

## Advanced

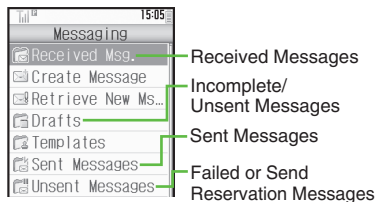
- Saving attachments to Data Folder
- Saving to Phone Book
- Using linked info
- Jumping to message top/bottom
- Reporting unsolicited message sources as spammers
- Selecting mail type/quote option
- Replying quickly using fixed text
- Replying to messages automatically (And more on P.4-18 - 4-19)
- Selecting quote option (P.4-24)



## Managing & Using Messages

### Messaging Folders

Messages are organized in folders by type.



#### Auto Delete

- Oldest received/sent messages are deleted automatically to save new ones when memory is full. (Protect important messages to avoid unintentional deletion.)

#### Opening Help

- Follow these steps in folder list, message list or message window:



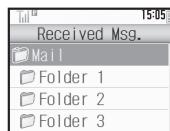
Help

#### When Failed Message is Saved

- A reminder message appears upon opening Messaging menu.

### Checking Messages

#### 1 Received Msg. or Sent Messages



Folder List

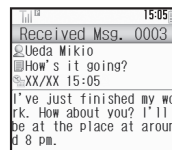
- Select Mail folder and press to hide/show sub folders. To open full message list, hide sub folders and press .

#### 2 Select folder



Message List

#### 3 Select message



Message Window

### Protecting Messages

#### 1 In message list, select message



Manage Msg.

#### 2 Lock



#### Canceling Protection

In , Unlock








### Advanced

- Selecting multiple messages
- Deleting messages
- Deleting Server Mail via Server Mail list (And more on P.4-20 - 4-21)
- Forwarding messages
- Sending from Drafts
- Checking Server Mail message count and volume (And more on P.4-23)
- Changing message window scroll unit
- Selecting automatic deletion option for received messages
- Canceling automatic deletion of oldest sent messages (And more on P.4-24)






## Searching Messages

Search messages by message text, sender/recipient address, etc.




- 1  ➔ **Received Msg. or Sent Messages** ➔ 
- 2  ➔ **Search** ➔ 
- 3 **Search All Msg.** ➔ 
- 4 **Select method** ➔  ➔ **Select/enter address or text** ➔ 



### Searching by Folder

In , select folder ➔  ➔ **Search** ➔  ➔ **Search Folder** ➔  ➔ 

### Searching Message Text







- Follow these steps to find specific words/phrases; limit search by character type.

[Message Window]  ➔ **Search Text** ➔  ➔ **Enter text** ➔ 

- Press  or  to jump to next/previous search result.


## Hiding Folders

Hide Received Msg./Sent Message folder to require Handset Code for access to the folder and messages within.


- 1  ➔ **Received Msg. or Sent Messages** ➔ 
- 2 **Select folder** ➔ 
- 3 **Set Secret** ➔  ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔  ➔ 

### Accessing Secret Folders

After 1,  ➔ **Unlock Temporarily** ➔

 ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔ 

## Advanced






-  Moving messages manually
- Renaming folders
- Deleting folders
- Adding folders
- Moving folders
- Changing status of all messages within folders to read
- Canceling automatic deletion of messages within folders
- Canceling Secret (P.4-21)

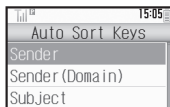






## Sorting Messages

### Sorting into Designated Folders



Sort messages by sender/recipient or partially matching text in sender/recipient address, subject or SMS message text.

- 1  ➔ **Received Msg. or Sent Messages** ➔ 
- 2 **Select target folder** ➔ 
- 3 **My Folders** ➔  ➔ **Select blank entry** ➔ 





- 4 **Sender (Recipient for Sent Messages)** ➔ 
- 5 **Select method** ➔  ➔ **Select/enter number/address** ➔ 
- 6  ➔ **Saved**

### Sorting by Domain

In 4, **Sender(Domain)**  
(**Recipient(Domain)** for Sent Messages) ➔  ➔ **Enter domain** ➔  ➔ 5









### Sorting by Part of Subject/SMS Message Text

In 4, **Subject** ➔  ➔ **Enter text** ➔  ➔ 5







### Filtering Spam

Follow these steps to filter messages from handset numbers/addresses not saved in Phone Book into Spam Folder:


(Alternatively, set sort keys to filter messages.)

- 1  ➔ **Settings** ➔  ➔ **General Settings** ➔ 
- 2 **Anti Spam Measures** ➔ 
- 3 **Enter Handset Code** ➔ 
- 4 **Unregistered** ➔  (✓)
- 5  ➔ 

### Exempting Messages from Filtering

After 4, **Permitted List** ➔  ➔ **Select blank entry** ➔  ➔ **Select key** ➔  ➔ **Select/enter number/address/subject** ➔  ➔  ➔  ➔ (✓) ➔ 5

### Advanced

 ● Re-sorting messages ● Sorting spam by setting keys ● Editing/deleting sort keys (P.4-22)

## Creating Groups for Broadcast Mail

Create Mail Groups to send messages to multiple recipients at one time.

Save target recipients to Phone Book beforehand.

1 ➔ **Settings** ➔

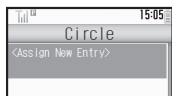
2 **Set Mail Group** ➔



Mail Group Entry Window

3 **<Add New Group>** ➔ ➔ **Enter name** ➔

4 **Select Group** ➔



5 **<Assign New Entry>** ➔   
➔ **Select entry** ➔



6 **Select number or mail address** ➔



- Omit if only one number or address is saved.
- Repeat - to add members.

7 ➔ **Saved**









































### Advanced

● Renaming Mail Groups ● Deleting Mail Groups/Group members ● Changing Mail Group members (P.4-22)


















## Creating/Sending Messages















### Recipient

Using other recipient entry methods	In Mail Composition window, select recipient field ➔  ➔ Select method ➔  ➔ Select/enter number/address ➔ 
Adding recipients	In Mail Composition window, select recipient field ➔  ➔ <b>Add Recipient</b> ➔  ➔ Select method ➔  ➔ Select/enter number/address ➔  ➔ 
Switching recipient status (To, Cc and Bcc)	In Mail Composition window, select recipient field ➔  ➔ Select recipient  ➔ Select status ➔  ➔  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Other recipients cannot see numbers/addresses set to Bcc.</li> </ul>
Using Speed Dial/Mail list	<b>Saving Recipients</b>  ➔ <b>Settings</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Speed Dial/Mail</b> ➔  ➔  <b>&lt;Empty&gt;</b> ➔  ➔ Select entry ➔  ➔ Select number or mail address ➔  ➔ <b>Do not Assign</b> ➔  ➔ 
	<b>Creating Messages</b> In Standby,  -  -  (Speed Dial/Mail entry number) ➔  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When messaging to SoftBank handset numbers, select <b>S! Mail</b> or <b>SMS</b> and press .</li> </ul>
Editing/deleting recipients	 In Mail Composition window, select recipient field ➔  ➔ See below
	<b>Editing Recipients</b> Select recipient ➔  ➔ Edit ➔  ➔  ➔ 
	<b>Deleting a Recipient</b> Select recipient ➔  ➔ <b>Delete</b> ➔  ➔  ➔ 
	<b>Deleting All Recipients</b> Select recipient ➔  ➔ <b>Delete All</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Yes</b> ➔  ➔ 

### Editing Speed Dial/Mail list

 <b>Start Here</b>  ➔ <b>Settings</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Speed Dial/Mail</b> ➔  ➔ See below
<b>Editing Entries</b> Select entry ➔  ➔ <b>Change</b> ➔  ➔ Select number/address ➔  ➔ Select new number/address ➔  ➔ 
<b>Canceling Entries</b> Select entry ➔  ➔ <b>Remove Selected</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Yes</b> ➔ 
<b>Canceling All Entries</b>  ➔ <b>Remove All</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Yes</b> ➔ 

### Message Text

Inserting signature automatically	 ➔ <b>Settings</b> ➔  ➔ <b>S! Mail Settings</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Signature</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Edit</b> ➔  ➔ Enter signature ➔  ➔ <b>Auto Insert</b> ➔  ➔ <b>On</b> ➔  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Signature is inserted above message text when forwarding messages or quoting original message text in replies.</li> <li>Not available for SMS.</li> </ul>
Inserting signature manually	In text entry window,  ➔ <b>Insert/Font Size</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Signature</b> ➔ 
Converting mail type (SMS/S! Mail)	In Mail Composition window,  ➔ <b>Change to SMS or Convert to S! Mail</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Yes</b> ➔ 



## ■ Save, Send Reservation & Sent Cancel

Saving without sending	After completing message,  ➔ <b>Save to Drafts</b> ➔
Sending automatically later	<p><b>Start Here</b> After completing message,  ➔ <b>Send Reservation</b> ➔  ➔ See below</p> <p><b>Auto Send when Signal Returns Within the Network</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Yes</b> ➔ </p> <p><b>Designating Send Date/Time (within one week)</b>  <b>Date &amp; Time</b> ➔  ➔ Enter date/time ➔  ➔ <b>Yes</b> ➔ </p>
Canceling sent S! Mail	<p> ➔ <b>Sent Messages</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Select folder</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Select message</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Set Sent Cancel</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Yes</b> ➔ </p> <p>• Effective for messages addressed to SoftBank handsets.</p>

## ■ Messaging Settings

For SMS, only Delivery Report and Expiry Time are available.

Requesting delivery confirmation	<p>In Mail Composition window,  ➔ <b>Messaging Settings</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Delivery Report</b> ➔  ➔ <b>On</b> ➔ </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Delivery Report arrives when message is delivered.</li> <li>• Open sent message to check delivery status indicator: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>: Delivered, : Unknown, : Failed</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Effective for messages addressed to SoftBank handsets.</li> </ul>
Setting priority	In Mail Composition window,  ➔ <b>Messaging Settings</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Priority</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Select priority</b> ➔
Setting message to be deleted from recipient handset once read	<p>In Mail Composition window,  ➔ <b>Messaging Settings</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Set Auto Delete</b> ➔  ➔ <b>On</b> ➔ </p> <p>• Effective for messages addressed to SoftBank handsets.</p>

Adding a reply request	<p>In Mail Composition window,  ➔ <b>Messaging Settings</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Reply Request</b> ➔  ➔ <b>On</b> ➔ </p> <p>• Effective for messages addressed to SoftBank handsets.</p>
Restricting forward/delete	<p>In Mail Composition window,  ➔ <b>Messaging Settings</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Forward NG or Delete NG</b> ➔  ➔ <b>On</b> ➔ </p> <p>• Effective for messages addressed to SoftBank handsets.</p>
Locking message with Quiz	<p><b>Start Here</b> In Mail Composition window,  ➔ <b>Messaging Settings</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Quiz</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Switch On/Off</b> ➔  ➔ <b>On</b> ➔  ➔ See below</p> <p>• Effective for messages addressed to SoftBank handsets.</p> <p><b>Using Preset Questions (Multiple Choice)</b>  Select question ➔  ➔ <b>Selection</b> ➔  ➔ Select number ➔  ➔ Enter/edit option ➔  ➔ Enter/edit all options ➔ <b>Select answer</b> ➔  ➔  ➔ </p> <p>• May be unavailable for some questions.</p> <p><b>Using Preset Questions (Exact Answer Entry)</b>  Select question ➔  ➔ <b>Match Characters</b> ➔  ➔ Enter answer ➔ </p> <p>• May be unavailable for some questions.</p> <p><b>Creating Custom Quiz (Multiple Choice)</b>  &lt;Create Original&gt; ➔  ➔ Enter question ➔  ➔ <b>Selection</b> ➔  ➔ Select number ➔  ➔ Enter option ➔  ➔ <b>Complete entry</b> ➔ </p> <p>Select answer ➔  ➔  ➔ </p> <p><b>Creating Custom Quiz (Exact Answer Entry)</b>  &lt;Create Original&gt; ➔  ➔ Enter question ➔  ➔ <b>Match Characters</b> ➔  ➔ Enter answer ➔  ➔ </p>
Editing assigned Quiz	<p>In Mail Composition window,  ➔ <b>Messaging Settings</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Quiz</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Edit Question</b> ➔  ➔ Edit question/options/answer ➔  ➔  again after editing options)</p> <p>• Effective for messages addressed to SoftBank handsets.</p>



Designating/editing  
reply-to address

**[Start Here]** In Mail Composition window, ➔ **Messaging Settings** ➔ ➔ **Reply to Settings** ➔ ➔ See below

**Designating**

**Switch On/Off** ➔ ➔ **On** ➔ ➔ **Select method** ➔ ➔ **Select/enter address** ➔

**Editing**

**Edit Address** ➔ ➔ **Edit** ➔

Changing Server  
sent message  
storage limit

In Mail Composition window, ➔ **Messaging Settings** ➔ ➔ **Expiry Time** ➔ ➔ **Select option** ➔   
 • Available for SMS only.

## ■ Attachments

Changing attached  
image size

Select attached file ➔ ➔ **Resize Picture** ➔ ➔ **Select size** ➔   
 • May be unavailable for some images.

Capturing/recording  
and attaching

**[Start Here]** Select attachment field ➔ ➔ See below

**Still Images**

**Picture** ➔ ➔ **Take Picture** ➔ ➔ ➔ **to shoot** ➔

**Video**

**Video** ➔ ➔ **Record Video** ➔ ➔ ➔ **to start recording** ➔ ➔ **to stop** ➔ **Accept** ➔   
 ➔ **Select storage media** ➔

**Sounds**

**Sound** ➔ ➔ **Record Voice** ➔ ➔ ➔ **to start recording** ➔ ➔ **to stop** ➔ **Accept** ➔   
 ➔ **Select storage media** ➔

## Set Auto Play File

Select attached file ➔ ➔ **Set Auto Play File** ➔ ➔ **Switch On/Off** ➔ ➔ **On** ➔ ➔ **Enter Message** ➔ ➔ **Enter comment** ➔   
 ➔

## ■ Graphic Mail

Creating Graphic  
Mail from templates**Opening Templates from Messaging Menu**

➔ **Templates** ➔ ➔ **Select template** ➔   
 ➔ **Complete message** ➔   
 • Template size may change when used for creating messages.

**Opening Templates from S! Mail Composition Window**

In Mail Composition window, ➔ **Launch Template** ➔ ➔ **Select template** ➔ ➔ **Complete message** ➔   
 • Open a template before entering message text.

Changing text  
color, size & effect

In text entry window, (Long) ➔ ➔ **Select start point** ➔ ➔ **Highlight text range** ➔   
 ➔ **COLOR, SIZE or EFFECT** ➔ ➔ **Set** ➔

## Changing text color

In text entry window, (Long) ➔ **COLOR** ➔ ➔ **Select color** ➔ ➔ **Enter text**

Inserting  
background sound

**[Start Here]** In text entry window, (Long) ➔ **INSERT** ➔ ➔ See below

**Inserting**

**BGM Sound** ➔ ➔ **Select folder** ➔ ➔ **Select file** ➔

**Deleting**

**Delete BGM** ➔ ➔ **Yes** ➔
















Inserting Flash® file	In text entry window,  (Long) ➤ <b>INSERT</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Flash</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Select file</b> ➤
Previewing Flash® file	In text entry window after inserting Flash® file,  ➤ <b>Preview</b> ➤ • When Graphic Mail window is open, press  first.
Deleting Flash® file	In text entry window after inserting Flash® file, move cursor before Flash® icon ➤ • When Graphic Mail window is open, press  first.
Inserting horizontal line	In text entry window,  (Long) ➤ <b>INSERT</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Line</b> ➤
Flashing text	<b>Start Here</b> In text entry window,  (Long) ➤ <b>See below</b>
	<b>Flashing</b> <b>EFFECT</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Blink</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Blink On</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Enter text</b>
	<b>Canceling</b> ➤ <b>Select start point</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Highlight text range</b> ➤  ➤ <b>EFFECT</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Blink</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Blink Off</b> ➤
Aligning text (left/right/center)	In text entry window,  (Long) ➤ <b>EFFECT</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Alignment</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Select option</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Enter text</b>






















## Receiving/Opening Messages

### Receiving

Accessing new mail out of Standby	(Long) ➤ <b>Select message</b> ➤ • Message opens as read-only.
Retrieving new S! Mail manually	➤ • Retrieve messages missed while handset is out-of-range.
Retrieving Server Mail list	➤ <b>Server Mail Box</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Mail List</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Yes</b> ➤
Retrieving remaining portions	<b>Via Mail Notice</b> In message list, select Mail Notice ➤  ➤
	<b>Via Server Mail List</b> ➤ <b>Server Mail Box</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Mail List</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Select message</b> ➤ • If retrieve list confirmation appears, choose <b>Yes</b> and press .



Retrieving all Server Mail	<p><b>Start Here</b>  ➔ <b>Server Mail Box</b>  ➔ <b>See below</b></p> <p><b>Directly from Server</b>  <b>Retrieve All</b> </p> <p><b>Via Server Mail List</b>  <b>Mail List</b>   ➔ <b>Retrieve All</b> </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If retrieve list confirmation appears, choose <b>Yes</b> and press .</li> </ul>
<b>Opening</b>	
Viewing new messages on External Display	<p> ➔ </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Available with handset closed.</li> </ul>
<b>Message Window</b>	
Saving attachments to Data Folder	<p>In message window, select file  ➔ <b>Save to Data Folder</b>  ➔ <b>Enter name</b>  ➔ <b>Save here</b> </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For templates, <b>Save as Template</b> appears. (Omit file name entry step.)</li> </ul>

Using attachments	<p><b>Start Here</b>  In message window, select file  ➔ <b>See below</b></p> <p><b>As Wallpaper</b>  <b>Set as Wallpaper</b>  ➔ <b>Enter name</b>  ➔ <b>Save here</b> </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For images smaller or larger than Display, Wallpaper Display options appear; follow onscreen prompts.</li> </ul> <p><b>As Ringtone/Ringvideo</b>  <b>Set as Ringtone</b> or <b>Set as Ring Video</b>  ➔ <b>Enter name</b>  ➔ <b>Save here</b>  ➔ <b>Select item</b> </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For <b>For New Message</b>, enter ring time and press .</li> </ul>
Playing slides	<p>In message window,  ➔ <b>Slide Play</b> </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A slide consists of message text with attachments.</li> </ul>
Saving to Phone Book	<p><b>Saving Sender Address</b>  In message window,  ➔ <b>Save Address</b>  ➔ <b>Select number or mail address</b>  ➔ <b>As New Entry</b>  ➔ <b>Complete other fields</b> </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To add to an existing entry, select <b>As New Detail</b>.</li> </ul> <p><b>Saving Linked Info</b>  In message window, select number or mail address  ➔ <b>Save to Phone Book</b> or <b>Save Address</b>  ➔ <b>As New Entry</b>  ➔ <b>Complete other fields</b> </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To add to an existing entry, select <b>As New Detail</b>.</li> </ul>



Using linked info	<b>Dialing Numbers</b> In message window, select number →  → <b>Call or Video Call</b> →
	<b>Sending Messages</b> In message window, select number or mail address →  → <b>Create Message</b> →  → <b>S! Mail or SMS</b> →  → Complete message → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For mail addresses, omit mail type selection step.</li> </ul>
	<b>Accessing Internet Sites</b> In message window, select URL →  → Yes → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select <b>PC Site Br.</b> to connect via PC Site Browser.</li> </ul>
Copying text	In message window,  → <b>Copy</b> →  → See below
	<b>Sender/Recipient Number/Address</b> <b>Address</b> →  → Select number/address →
	<b>Subject or Message Text</b> <b>Subject or Message Text</b> →  → Select first character →  → Highlight text range →
Jumping to message top/bottom	In message window,  → <b>View Settings</b> →  → <b>Scroll Jump</b> →  → <b>Jump to Top or Jump to Bottom</b> →
Deleting attachments	In message window, select file →  → <b>Remove File</b> →  → Yes →
Reporting unsolicited message sources as spammers	In message window,  → <b>Report Spam</b> →  → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Signature is not inserted automatically.</li> </ul>

## ■ Replying

Selecting mail type/quote option	In message window,  → <b>Reply-To Addr.</b> →  → Select type/option →  → Complete message →
Replying quickly using fixed text	<b>Editing Quick Reply Text</b> → <b>Settings</b> →  → <b>General Settings</b> →  → <b>Send/Compose</b> →  → <b>Set Quick Reply</b> →  → Select text →  → <b>Edit</b> →
	<b>Using Quick Reply</b> In message window,  (Long) → Select text →
Replying to messages automatically	→ <b>Settings</b> →  → <b>General Settings</b> →  → <b>Send/Compose</b> →  → <b>Auto Reply</b> →  → See below
	<b>Saving Recipients</b> <b>Address Setting</b> →  → Select blank entry →  → Select method →  → Select/enter number/address →  → Select mode →  (/✓) →  → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select saved recipient and press  to edit number/address.</li> </ul>
	<b>Editing Reply Text</b> <b>Reply Message</b> →  → Select mode →  → Enter text → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Edit text for each mode.</li> </ul>
	<b>Activating Auto Reply</b> <b>Switch On/Off</b> →  → On → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Replies are sent via S! Mail.</li> <li>Replies are sent to the same sender only once after each time Auto Reply is activated.</li> </ul>



## Managing Messages

## ■ Message List

Selecting multiple messages	<b>Selecting</b> In message list,  → Select message →  (  ) • To uncheck, press  again.
	<b>Selecting Up to 50 Messages at Once</b> In message list,  → Manage Msg. →  → Check in Block →
	<b>Unchecking All</b> In message list,  → Unselect All →
Color-tagging messages	In message list,  → Manage Msg. →  → Color Label →  → Select color →
Sorting messages	In message list,  → View Settings →  → Sort →  → Select option →
Opening sender/recipient details	In message list, select message →  → View Mail Address →  → Select sender or recipient →
Checking memory status	→ Memory Status →  → Select item → • USIM Card SMS message count and volume do not appear.
Opening properties	In message list, select message →  → Message Details →
Changing template name display	→ Templates →  →  → Item Displayed →  → Select item →

## Saving SMS messages to USIM Card

In message list, select SMS message → → Manage Msg. → → SIM Sync →   
 • Available for compatible USIM Cards.

## Changing received message status (read/unread)

In message list, select message → → Manage Msg. → → Switch to Unread or  
 Switch to Read →

## ■ Deleting Messages

Deleting messages	<b>One Message</b> In message list, select message →  → Delete →  → Yes → • Alternatively, delete an open message.
	<b>All Messages</b> In message list,  → Manage Msg. →  → Delete All →  → Delete All or Except Locked Msg. →  → Enter Handset Code →
	<b>All Messages in Drafts or Unsent Messages</b> In message list (Drafts or Unsent Messages), → Delete All →  → Enter Handset Code →
Deleting Server Mail via Mail Notice	In message list, select Mail Notice →  → Delete →  → Select option →  → Yes →



Deleting Server Mail via Server Mail list	<p><b>Start Here</b> ➤ <b>Server Mail Box</b> ➤ <b>Mail List</b> ➤ <b>See below</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If retrieve list confirmation appears, choose <b>Yes</b> and press <b>[OK]</b>.</li> </ul>
	<p><b>One Message</b></p> <p>Select message ➤ <b>Delete</b> ➤ <b>Yes</b> ➤ <b>[OK]</b></p> <p><b>All Messages</b></p> <p><b>Delete All</b> ➤ <b>Enter Handset Code</b> ➤ <b>Yes</b> ➤ <b>[OK]</b></p>
Deleting all Server Mail directly from Server	<p><b>Start Here</b> ➤ <b>Server Mail Box</b> ➤ <b>Delete All</b> ➤ <b>Enter Handset Code</b> ➤ <b>See below</b></p> <p><b>All Retrieved Messages</b></p> <p><b>Except New Msg.</b> ➤ <b>[OK]</b></p> <p><b>All Messages</b></p> <p><b>Delete All</b> ➤ <b>[OK]</b></p>

## Folders

Moving messages manually	<p>In message list, select message ➤ <b>Manage Msg.</b> ➤ <b>Move to Folder</b> ➤ <b>Select folder</b> ➤ <b>[OK]</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If sort messages confirmation appears, choose <b>Yes</b> and press <b>[OK]</b>; messages sent to/received from the number/address will be sorted into selected folder automatically.</li> </ul>
Renaming folders	<p>In folder list, select folder ➤ <b>Rename</b> ➤ <b>Enter name</b> ➤ <b>[OK]</b></p>
Deleting folders	<p>In folder list, select folder ➤ <b>Delete</b> ➤ <b>Enter Handset Code</b> ➤ <b>[OK]</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If delete message confirmation appears, choose <b>Yes</b> and press <b>[OK]</b>.</li> </ul>
Adding folders	<p>In folder list, <b>Create New Folder</b> ➤ <b>Enter name</b> ➤ <b>[OK]</b></p>
Moving folders	<p>In folder list, select folder ➤ <b>Relocate Folder</b> ➤ <b>Select target location</b> ➤ <b>[OK]</b></p>
Changing status of all messages within folders to read	<p>In folder list, select folder ➤ <b>To All Read</b> ➤ <b>Yes</b> ➤ <b>[OK]</b></p>
Canceling automatic deletion of messages within folders	<p>In folder list, select folder ➤ <b>Protect</b> ➤ <b>[OK]</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To cancel protection, select <b>Not Protect</b> and press <b>[OK]</b> in the steps above.</li> </ul>
Canceling Secret	<p>Unlock Secret folders temporarily and select Secret folder ➤ <b>Unset Secret</b> ➤ <b>[OK]</b> ➤ <b>Enter Handset Code</b> ➤ <b>[OK]</b></p>



## ■ Sorting into Folders

Re-sorting messages	In folder list, select folder ➡  ➡ <i>Classify</i> ➡
Sorting spam by setting keys	➡ <i>Settings</i> ➡  ➡ <i>General Settings</i> ➡ ➡ <i>Anti Spam Measures</i> ➡  ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡  ➡ <i>Individual</i> ➡  (✓) ➡ Select blank entry ➡  ➡ Select key ➡  ➡ Select/enter number/address/subject ➡  ➡ ➡  ➡
Editing/deleting sort keys	<div>  In folder list, select folder ➡  ➡ <i>My Folders</i> ➡  ➡ Select entry ➡ See below         </div> <div> <b>Editing Sender/Recipient Key</b>   ➡ <i>Replace</i> ➡  ➡ Select method ➡  ➡            Select/enter number/address ➡  ➡  </div> <div> <b>Editing Subject Key</b>   ➡ Edit ➡  ➡  </div> <div> <b>Deleting an Entry</b>   ➡ <i>Delete</i> ➡  ➡ Yes ➡  ➡  </div> <div> <b>Deleting All Entries</b>   ➡ <i>Clear All</i> ➡  ➡ Yes ➡  ➡  </div>

## ■ Mail Groups

Renaming Mail Groups	➡ <i>Settings</i> ➡  ➡ <i>Set Mail Group</i> ➡  ➡ Select Group ➡  ➡ <i>Edit Name</i> ➡  ➡ Enter name ➡  ➡ Yes ➡
Deleting Mail Groups/Group members	<div>  ➡ <i>Settings</i> ➡  ➡ <i>Set Mail Group</i> ➡            ➡  ➡ Select Group ➡ See below         </div> <div> <b>Mail Groups</b>   ➡ <i>Delete</i> ➡  ➡ Yes ➡  ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡  </div> <div> <b>Group Members</b>   ➡ Select member ➡  ➡ <i>Remove Entry</i> ➡   ➡ Yes ➡  ➡  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Source Phone Book entries remain even after deleting members.</li> </ul> </div>
Changing Mail Group members	➡ <i>Settings</i> ➡  ➡ <i>Set Mail Group</i> ➡  ➡ Select Group ➡  ➡ Select member ➡  ➡ <i>Re-assign Entry</i> ➡  ➡ Select entry ➡  ➡ Select number or mail address ➡  ➡ Yes ➡ ➡



## Using Messages

Forwarding messages	<p>In message window,  ➔ <b>Forward</b> ➔  ➔</p> <p>Select recipient field ➔  ➔ Select method ➔  ➔ Select/enter number/address ➔  ➔ </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Attached files are forwarded.</li> <li>To forward SMS messages, select <b>S! Mail</b> or <b>SMS</b> and press .</li> </ul>
Sending from Drafts	<p> ➔ <b>Drafts</b> ➔  ➔ Select message ➔  ➔</p> <p>Complete message ➔ </p>
Sending unsent messages	<p> ➔ <b>Unsent Messages</b> ➔  ➔ Select message ➔  ➔ See below</p> <p><b>Sending without Editing</b></p> <p><b>Resend</b> ➔ </p> <p><b>Edit &amp; Send</b></p> <p><b>Edit</b> ➔  ➔ Complete message ➔ </p>
Using sent messages	<p> ➔ <b>Sent Messages</b> ➔  ➔ Select folder ➔ </p> <p> ➔ Select message ➔  ➔ <b>Edit &amp; Send</b> ➔ </p> <p> ➔ Complete message ➔ </p>
Saving schedules from message list	<p>In message list, select message ➔  ➔</p> <p><b>Manage Msg.</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Save to Calendar</b> ➔ </p> <p>Enter subject ➔  ➔ Enter start/end date/time ➔  ➔ Complete other fields ➔ </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Source message is accessible from schedule window (via <b>Related Mail</b> in Options menu).</li> </ul>

## Forwarding Server Mail

## Via Mail Notice

In message list, select Mail Notice ➔ ➔

**Forward** ➔ ➔ **Notifi. Forward** (forward Mail Notice text only) or **Remote Forward** ➔ ➔

Select recipient field ➔ ➔ Select method ➔ ➔ Select/enter number/address ➔ ➔

## Via Server Mail List

➔ **Server Mail Box** ➔ ➔ **Mail List** ➔

➔ Select message ➔ ➔ **Remote Forward** ➔

➔ Select recipient field ➔ ➔ Select method ➔ ➔ Select/enter number/address ➔ ➔

- If retrieve list confirmation appears, choose **Yes** and press .

## Opening Server Mail properties

➔ **Server Mail Box** ➔ ➔ **Mail List** ➔

Select message ➔ ➔ **Message Details** ➔












































- If retrieve list confirmation appears, choose **Yes** and press .

## Checking Server Mail message count and volume




































➔ **Server Mail Box** ➔ ➔ **Mailbox Volume** ➔



## General Settings

Changing message window scroll unit	 ➤ <b>Settings</b> ➤  ➤ <b>General Settings</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Scroll Unit</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Select unit</b> ➤ 
Changing message list view	 ➤ <b>Settings</b> ➤  ➤ <b>General Settings</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Message List View</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Select option</b> ➤ 
Showing complete sent/received message addresses	 ➤ <b>Settings</b> ➤  ➤ <b>General Settings</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Address View</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Show All</b> ➤ 
Changing view for Received Msg. folder	 ➤ <b>Settings</b> ➤  ➤ <b>General Settings</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Received Msg. View</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Select option</b> ➤ 
Changing view for Sent Messages folder	 ➤ <b>Settings</b> ➤  ➤ <b>General Settings</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Sent Msg. View</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Select option</b> ➤ 
Selecting automatic deletion option for received messages	 ➤ <b>Settings</b> ➤  ➤ <b>General Settings</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Auto Delete</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Received Msg.</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Select option</b> ➤ 
Canceling automatic deletion of oldest sent messages	 ➤ <b>Settings</b> ➤  ➤ <b>General Settings</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Auto Delete</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Sent Messages</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Not Auto Del</b> ➤ 
Changing spam report recipient	 ➤ <b>Settings</b> ➤  ➤ <b>General Settings</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Report Spam</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Edit address</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Yes</b> ➤ 

## General Settings (Send/Compose)

Requesting Delivery Report for all messages	 ➤ <b>Settings</b> ➤  ➤ <b>General Settings</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Send/Compose</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Delivery Report</b> ➤  ➤ <b>On</b> ➤  • Effective for messages addressed to SoftBank handsets.
Disabling automatic resend of unsent messages	 ➤ <b>Settings</b> ➤  ➤ <b>General Settings</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Send/Compose</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Auto Resend</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Off</b> ➤ 
Designating/editing reply-to address	<b>(Start Here)</b>  ➤ <b>Settings</b> ➤  ➤ <b>General Settings</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Send/Compose</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Reply to Settings</b> ➤  ➤ <b>See below</b>  <b>Designating</b> <b>Switch On/Off</b> ➤  ➤ <b>On</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Select method</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Select/enter address</b> ➤   <b>Editing</b> <b>Edit Address</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Edit</b> ➤ 
Selecting quote option	 ➤ <b>Settings</b> ➤  ➤ <b>General Settings</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Send/Compose</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Reply With Text</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Select option</b> ➤ 
Hiding progress bar while sending messages	 ➤ <b>Settings</b> ➤  ➤ <b>General Settings</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Send/Compose</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Sending Status</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Off(Background)</b> ➤ 



## General Settings (Receive)

## ■ Message Notice &amp; Animation View

Muting ringer, etc. for messages sorted into Secret folders	→ Settings →  → General Settings → → Receive →  → Message Notice →  → Secret Folder →  → No Response →
Changing alerts for messages received during handset use	Start Here  → Settings →  → General Settings →  → Receive →  → Message Notice →  → See below <b>Showing New Message Window</b> On Active Screen →  → On → <b>Selecting Scrolling Notice Option</b> View Setting →  → Select option → <b>Muting Alert Sound</b> Alert Sound →  → Off →
Disabling Animation View	→ Settings →  → General Settings → → Receive →  → Animation View →  → Off →

## ■ Feeling Mail

Hiding graphics above Information window	→ Settings →  → General Settings → → Receive →  → Link to Feeling →  → Idle Screen Info. →  → Off →
Disabling illumination	→ Settings →  → General Settings → → Receive →  → Link to Feeling →  → Light →  → Off →
Selecting Vibration option	→ Settings →  → General Settings → → Receive →  → Link to Feeling →  → Vibration Pattern →  → Select option →
Changing ringtone settings	Start Here  → Settings →  → General Settings →  → Receive →  → Link to Feeling →  → Ringtone →  → See below <b>Muting Ringer</b> Switch On/Off →  → Off → <b>Changing Ringtones</b> Assign Tone →  → Select category →  → Select folder →  → Select tone/file → <b>Changing Duration</b> Duration →  → Enter time →



## S! Mail Settings

## Automatic Retrieval

Retrieving complete S! Mail messages manually

 ➔ *Settings* ➔  ➔ *S! Mail Settings* ➔  ➔ *Message DL* ➔  ➔ *Manual* ➔ 

Retrieving specified messages

 ➔ *Settings* ➔  ➔ *S! Mail Settings* ➔  ➔ *Message DL* ➔  ➔ *Specify Auto* ➔  ➔ See below

## Selecting Sender Types

Select item ➔  (  /  ) ➔ 

## Specifying Numbers/Addresses

*Individual Address* ➔  ➔ Select blank entry ➔  ➔ Select method ➔  ➔ Select/enter number/address ➔  ➔ 

## Deleting an Individual Address Entry

*Individual Address* ➔  ➔ Select entry ➔  ➔ *Delete* ➔  ➔ *Yes* ➔  ➔ 

## Deleting All Individual Address Entries

*Individual Address* ➔  ➔ Select entry ➔  ➔ *Clear All* ➔  ➔ *Yes* ➔  ➔ 

## Attachments

Enabling image auto-resize

 ➔ *Settings* ➔  ➔ *S! Mail Settings* ➔  ➔ *Picture Appearance* ➔  ➔ *Double-Sized* ➔ 

Enabling/disabling image auto-open or sound auto-play

 ➔ *Settings* ➔  ➔ *S! Mail Settings* ➔  ➔ *Auto Play File* ➔  ➔ *Pictures or Sounds* ➔  ➔ *On or Off* ➔ 

Attaching captured/recorded files unsaved

 ➔ *Settings* ➔  ➔ *S! Mail Settings* ➔  ➔ *Send File Settings* ➔  ➔ *Attach Only* ➔ 







## SMS Settings

Changing Server  
sent message  
storage limit

 ➔ **Settings** ➔  ➔ **SMS Settings** ➔  ➔  
**Expiry Time** ➔  ➔ **Select option** ➔ 

Changing SMS  
Server number

**Start Here**  ➔ **Settings** ➔  ➔ **SMS Settings** ➔  
 ➔ **Message Center** ➔  ➔ **See below**

**Editing**



**Setting1(Default) to Setting3** ➔  ➔ **Edit  
number** ➔ 

- Do not change Server number unless instructed to do so.

**Deleting**

**Setting2 or Setting3** ➔  ➔ **Delete** ➔  ➔  
**Yes** ➔ 

**Activating**

**Setting2 or Setting3** ➔  ➔ **Set Default** ➔   

- Activated number moves to **Setting1(Default)** and shifts the others down.

Changing  
character encoding  
for composing  
messages

 ➔ **Settings** ➔  ➔ **SMS Settings** ➔  ➔  
**Char-code** ➔  ➔ **Select encoding** ➔ 





- Follow these steps to change encoding:  
**[Message Window]**  **View**  
**Settings**  **Char-code**   
 **Select option** 

## Handling Messages



### Cannot move messages into some folders

- To move to Secret folders, unlock temporarily or cancel Secret beforehand.



### Cannot receive messages

- If appears, memory is full; delete messages (P.4-20).
- If **out** appears, move to a place where signal is strong.



### S! Mail is not delivered as sent

- Recipient must be subscribed to S! Mail, Super Mail or Long Mail. The maximum size of messages/ attachments handsets can receive varies by make and model. Confirm compatibility with recipient handsets.



### Still images are not delivered as sent

- Recipient handset may not be JPEG-compatible. Convert JPEG files to PNG.



### Video files are not delivered as sent

- Send video files to S! Mail- or VGS-compatible SoftBank handsets supporting MPEG-4.



<b>Internet Services .....</b>	<b>5-2</b>
Service Basics .....	5-2
<b>Yahoo! Keitai .....</b>	<b>5-3</b>
Using Yahoo! Keitai .....	5-3
<b>PC Site Browser .....</b>	<b>5-4</b>
Using PC Site Browser .....	5-4

<b>Browsing .....</b>	<b>5-5</b>
Basic Operations .....	5-5
<b>Bookmarks &amp; Saved Pages .....</b>	<b>5-7</b>
Using Bookmarks & Saved Pages .....	5-7
<b>Additional Functions .....</b>	<b>5-8</b>
<b>Troubleshooting .....</b>	<b>5-14</b>

# 5

## Internet



## Service Basics

Access the Mobile Internet via Yahoo! Keitai, or view PC Internet sites via PC Site Browser.

- Service requires a separate contract; retrieve Network Information to use these services.
- For more about Yahoo! Keitai, see SoftBank Mobile Website (**P.14-21**).

### Transmission/Information Fees

Some page content may automatically activate Internet connection incurring transmission fees. Information fees may also apply.

### Security

Electronic certificates are saved on handset to support SSL (encryption protocol for Internet transmissions of important/sensitive information).

### Secure Pages

- A confirmation appears before entering and exiting secure pages.
- When a security notice appears, subscribers must decide for themselves whether or not to open the page. Opening secure pages constitutes agreement to the terms of usage. SoftBank, VeriSign Japan, Cybertrust, Entrust Japan, GMO GlobalSign, RSA Security, SECOM Trust Systems and Comodo Japan cannot be held liable for any damages associated with the use of SSL.

## Advanced



- Clearing cache (temporarily saved information) ● Clearing authentication information (And more on **P.5-8**)
- Disabling manufacture number auto send for authentication ● Resetting browser settings and stored information (Bookmarks, Saved Pages, etc.) (And more on **P.5-13**)



# Using Yahoo! Keitai

## Using Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu

Browse Yahoo! Keitai sites from Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu.


Internet pages may not open depending on connection/Server status, etc.

### 1 ➔ Connection starts



Cursor

Internet Page

- Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu appears.
- To disconnect, press .

### 2 Highlight menu item ➔

- Corresponding page opens.
- Repeat 2 to open additional links.

### 3 ➔ Yes ➔ ➔ Page closes

## Returning to Previous Pages

[Internet Page]  ➔ Previous page opens



- Follow these steps to return to the initial page:

[Internet Page]  ➔ Forward ➔ 

Returning to Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu

[Internet Page]  ➔ Yahoo! Keitai ➔ 


## User Authentication

Enter user ID or password ➔  ➔ 

## Accessing メニューリスト Directly

 ➔ Yahoo! ➔  ➔ Menu List ➔ 

## Playing Media Streams (Streaming)

[Internet Page] Select file ➔ 

- Downloaded content cannot be saved.
- Packet transmission fees apply even while stream is paused.

## Using History

1  ➔ Yahoo! ➔  ➔ History ➔ 

2 Select record ➔  ➔ Connection starts

- Corresponding page opens.

3  ➔ Yes ➔  ➔ Page closes

## Entering URLs Directly


1  ➔ Yahoo! ➔  ➔ Enter URL ➔ 

2 Enter URL ➔  ➔ Connection starts

- Corresponding page opens.

3  ➔ Yes ➔  ➔ Page closes

## Advanced

-  Switching browsers
- Using previously entered URLs
- Deleting History records
- Opening History properties
- Sorting History records
- Sending History records via mail (P.5-8)
- Customizing streaming settings
- Streaming from Media Player (P.5-11)



## Using PC Site Browser

Browse PC sites from Yahoo! JAPAN (preset home page).

- Internet pages may not open depending on connection/Server status, etc.
- Browsing PC sites may incur high charges depending on subscribed price plan.

1 [Icon] ➔ **Yahoo!** ➔ [Icon] ➔ **PC Site Browser** ➔ [Icon]

2 [Icon] ➔ **Homepage** ➔ [Icon] ➔ **Connection starts**



Pointer

Internet Page

- Yahoo! JAPAN Home opens.
- If a message appears, follow onscreen prompts.
- To disconnect, press [Icon].

3 **Highlight menu item** ➔ [Icon]

- Corresponding page opens.
- Repeat [Icon] to open additional links.

4 [Icon] ➔ **Yes** ➔ [Icon] ➔ **Page closes**

### Returning to Previous Pages

[Internet Page] [Icon] ➔ **Previous page opens**

- Follow these steps to return to the initial page:

[Internet Page] [Icon] ➔ **Forward** ➔ [Icon]

**Returning to Yahoo! JAPAN Home**

[Internet Page] [Icon] ➔ **Homepage** ➔ [Icon]

### User Authentication

Enter user ID or password ➔ [Icon] ➔ [Icon]

### Using History

In ②, **History** ➔ [Icon] ➔ **Select record** ➔ [Icon]

### Entering URLs Directly

In ②, **Enter URL** ➔ [Icon] ➔ **Enter URL** ➔ [Icon]

### Hiding Softkeys

[Internet Page] [Icon] ➔ **Convenient Functions** ➔ [Icon] ➔ **Softkey Area** ➔ [Icon] ➔ **Off** ➔ [Icon]

### Browsing in Wideview

[Internet Page] [Icon] ➔ **Convenient Functions** ➔ [Icon] ➔ **Rotation** ➔ [Icon]

- Use Multi Selector according to page orientation.

## Advanced

- Switching browsers
- Using previously entered URLs
- Deleting History records
- Opening History properties
- Sorting History records
- Sending History records via mail (P.5-8)
- Hiding navigation map for continuous scroll
- Changing scroll unit
- Hiding PC Site Browser messages (P.5-10)



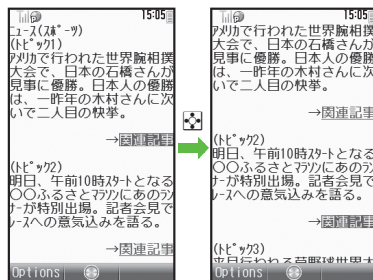
# Basic Operations

## Page Browsing

### Scrolling Pages

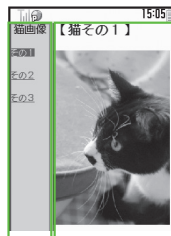
If page content continues beyond view, use to scroll pages.

Long Press to scroll continuously.



## Switching Frames

On framed pages, Long Press to select other frames.



Frames

- In pointer navigation, point to a frame and press to select it.
- Otherwise, use to select one.

### Viewing Single Frame

[Internet Page] Select frame

Convenient Functions

Frame In

- To return, press .

## Tabbed Browsing

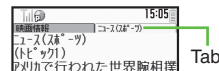
Open another page in a new tab and switch between tabs.

### Opening a New Tab

- 1 On a page, select menu item

⇒

- 2 Open in New Tab



### Switching Tabs

- 1 (Long) Select tab

⇒

- In pointer navigation, point to a tab and press to open it.

### Closing Tabs

(Long) Select tab

⇒ Close Tab or

Close All Other Tabs

## Advanced

- Using Web Search
- Searching current page
- Jumping to page top/bottom
- Saving files to Data Folder
- Changing Font Size
- Enlarging specific areas
- Disabling automatic image display/sound playback
- Changing scroll unit (And more on P.5-9 - 5-10)



## Selecting Text

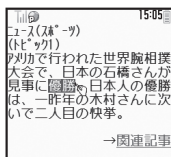
Activate pointer navigation to enable text selection (Drag Mode). Select text to copy.

- Text may not be selectable or linked page may open depending on the site or page.
- Follow these steps to create a message:

### 1 On a page, point to first character ➡ (Long)

- Drag Mode is activated.

### 2 Highlight text range






### 3

### 4 ➡ Create Message ➡

### 5 Select mail type ➡ ➡ Complete message ➡

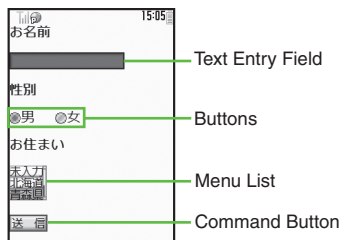
- S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.

## Starting Over

After , point to first character ➡   
➡ From 

## Additional Page Operations

Enter text or select/execute items.



## Text Entry

### 1 On a page, select text entry field ➡

### 2 Enter text ➡

- Internet page returns.

## Using Entered Text (Input Memory)

[Internet page] Select text entry field ➡

 ➡  ➡ Insert/Font Size ➡ 


Input Memory ➡  ➡ Select text ➡ 

## Pull-down Menu Item Selection

### 1 On a page, select menu list field ➡

### 2 Select item ➡

## When Multiple Selection is Supported

- Select items as needed and press .

## Page Item Indicators

### Selection Items

Buttons  or boxes  appear.

### 1 On a page, select button or box ➡



### Execution Items

Execute the assigned command.

### 1 On a page, select command ➡








# Using Bookmarks & Saved Pages

## Bookmarks

Bookmark sites for quick access.

### Saving Bookmarks

- 1 On a page,  ➔ **Bookmarks**  
➔  ➔ **Save** ➔   
• **Save** appears only for savable pages.
- 2 Enter/edit title ➔ 
- 3 **Save** ➔ 


## Opening Bookmarks

1 



- 2 **Select title** ➔   
• Corresponding page opens.

### Switching Bookmarks Lists

After 1,  ➔ **Change List** ➔  ➔  
**Select type** ➔ 





### Opening Bookmarks Online

[Internet Page]  ➔ **Select title** ➔ 





## Saved Pages

Save page content; handset opens saved pages without connecting to the Internet.





### Saving Pages

- 1 On a page,  ➔ **Saved Pages** ➔  ➔ **Save** ➔   
• **Save** appears only for savable pages.
- 2 Enter/edit title ➔ 


### Opening Saved Pages

- 1  ➔ **Yahoo!** ➔  ➔ **Saved Pages** ➔ 
- 2 **Select page** ➔   
• Corresponding page opens.

### Opening Saved Pages Online

[Internet Page]  ➔ **Saved Pages** ➔  
 ➔ **Open List** ➔  ➔ **Select page**  
➔ 

## Advanced

-  ● Deleting titles ● Editing titles ● Changing title order ● Sorting titles into folders ● Deleting pages ● Editing page titles ● Changing page order (And more on P.5-11 - 5-12)



## Connecting & Browsing

### General

Switching browsers	On a page, <i>Convenient Functions</i> <i>Change to PC Browser or Switch Browser</i> <i>This Page or Linked Page</i> <i>Yes or No</i>
Using previously entered URLs	<i>Start Here</i> <i>Yahoo!</i> <i>See below</i> <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> <i>Enter URL</i> <i>URL Entry Log</i> <i>Select URL</i> <i>PC Site Browser</i> <i>PC Site Browser</i> <i>Enter URL</i> <i>URL Entry Log</i> <i>Select URL</i>

### History

Deleting History records	<i>Start Here</i> <i>Yahoo!</i> <i>History</i> <i>Change to PC Browser or Switch Browser</i> <i>See below</i> <i>One Record</i> <i>Select record</i> <i>Delete</i> <i>Yes</i> <i>All Records</i> <i>Delete All</i> <i>Enter Handset Code</i> <i>Yes</i>
Opening History properties	<i>Yahoo!</i> <i>History</i> <i>Select record</i> <i>Details</i>
Sorting History records	<i>Yahoo!</i> <i>History</i> <i>Sort</i> <i>By Domain or By Date</i>

### Sending History records via mail

- Yahoo!* *History* *Select record* *Send URL* *S! Mail or SMS* *Complete message*
- S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.

### Memory Operation

For PC Site Browser, perform the following sequence instead of *Browser Settings* .

*PC Site Browser* *PC Site Browser Settings*

Clearing cache (temporarily saved information)	<i>Yahoo!</i> <i>Browser Settings</i> <i>Memory Operation</i> <i>Delete Cache</i> <i>Yes</i>
Clearing cookies	<i>Yahoo!</i> <i>Browser Settings</i> <i>Memory Operation</i> <i>Delete Cookies</i> <i>Yes</i>
Clearing authentication information	<i>Yahoo!</i> <i>Browser Settings</i> <i>Memory Operation</i> <i>Delete Auth Info</i> <i>Yes</i>



Page Operations	
■ Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser	
Using linked info	<b>Dialing Numbers</b> On a page, highlight number ➡  ➡ <i>Call or Video Call</i> ➡
	<b>Sending Messages</b> On a page, highlight number or mail address ➡  ➡ <i>Create Message</i> ➡  ➡ <i>S! Mail or SMS</i> ➡  ➡ <i>Complete message</i> ➡ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For mail addresses, omit mail type selection step.</li> </ul>
Copying text	On a page,  ➡ <i>Copy Text</i> ➡  ➡ <i>Select first character</i> ➡  ➡ <i>Highlight text range</i> ➡
Using Web Search	On a page,  ➡ <i>Convenient Functions</i> ➡  ➡ <i>Web Search</i> ➡  ➡ <i>Enter search text</i> ➡
Searching current page	On a page,  ➡ <i>Convenient Functions</i> ➡  ➡ <i>Search</i> ➡  ➡ <i>Enter search text</i> ➡ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press  to jump to next search result, if any.</li> </ul>
Jumping to page top/bottom	On a page,  ➡ <i>Convenient Functions</i> ➡  ➡ <i>Jump In Page</i> ➡  ➡ <i>Page Top or Page Bottom</i> ➡
Opening page properties	On a page,  ➡ <i>Convenient Functions</i> ➡  ➡ <i>Details</i> ➡  ➡ <i>Select item</i> ➡
Sending URLs via mail	On a page,  ➡ <i>Convenient Functions</i> ➡  ➡ <i>Send URL</i> ➡  ➡ <i>S! Mail or SMS</i> ➡  ➡ <i>Complete message</i> ➡ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.</li> </ul>

Handling Flash® files	[Start Here] On a page,  ➡ <i>Convenient Functions</i> ➡  ➡ <i>Flash@Menu</i> ➡  ➡ <i>See below</i>
	<b>Pausing/Playing</b> <i>Pause, Resume or Replay</i> ➡
Saving files to Data Folder	<b>Selecting Image Quality</b> <i>Quality</i> ➡  ➡ <i>Select quality</i> ➡
	[Start Here] On a page,  ➡ <i>Save Items</i> ➡  ➡ <i>See below</i>
	<b>Files on Page</b> <i>Select file</i> ➡  ➡ <i>Save</i> ➡  ➡ <i>Enter name</i> ➡  ➡ <i>Save here</i> ➡ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Some files are saved automatically.</li> <li>Confirm signal is strong, battery is adequately charged and that there is enough free memory beforehand.</li> </ul>
Updating page content	<b>Background Images</b> <i>Save Background Image</i> ➡  ➡ <i>Save</i> ➡  ➡ <i>Enter name</i> ➡  ➡ <i>Save here</i> ➡
	On a page,  ➡ <i>Reload</i> ➡ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To update content in Saved Pages, open a page and follow the steps above.</li> </ul>
Changing encoding to read garbled text	On a page,  ➡ <i>Settings</i> ➡  ➡ <i>Char-code</i> ➡  ➡ <i>Select option</i> ➡
Opening function shortcuts	On a page,  ➡ <i>Help</i> ➡
■ Yahoo! Keitai	
Changing Font Size	On a page,  (Long) to enlarge or  (Long) to reduce



## ■ PC Site Browser

Switching view	On a page,  ➔ <i>PC Screen or Small Screen</i> ➔ • In Small Screen view, PC sites are redesigned to fit Display.
Zooming on pages (Zoom Factor)	On a page,  (Long) to enlarge or  (Long) to reduce
Jumping to specific locations	On a page,  (Long) ➔ Quick Movement map appears ➔ Select target location ➔
Enlarging specific areas	On a page, point to area ➔  (Long) • Pointed area is enlarged while  is pressed.

## Internet Page Settings

## ■ Yahoo! Keitai &amp; PC Site Browser

For PC Site Browser, perform the following sequence instead of *Browser Settings* ➔ .

*PC Site Browser* ➔ ➔ *PC Site Browser Settings* ➔

Disabling automatic image display/sound playback	<i>Start Here</i> ➔ <i>Yahoo!</i> ➔ <i>Browser Settings</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Downloads</i> ➔  ➔ See below
	<i>Image Display</i> <i>Images</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Do not Show</i> ➔
	<i>Sound Playback</i> <i>Sounds</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Do not Play</i> ➔
Changing Font Size	➔ <i>Yahoo!</i> ➔ <i>Browser Settings</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Font Size</i> ➔  ➔ Select size ➔

Using pointer navigation	<i>Start Here</i> ➔ <i>Yahoo!</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Browser Settings</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Cursor Settings</i> ➔  ➔ See below
	<i>Activating</i> <i>Cursor Mode Settings</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Normal Mode</i> ➔
	<i>Changing Pointer Speed</i> <i>Speed Settings</i> ➔  ➔ Select speed ➔
Using Memory Card as primary download storage	➔ <i>Yahoo!</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Browser Settings</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Download to</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Prefer Card</i> ➔ • Some files may be saved to handset regardless of this setting.

## ■ Yahoo! Keitai

Changing scroll unit	➔ <i>Yahoo!</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Browser Settings</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Scroll Unit</i> ➔  ➔ Select unit ➔
----------------------	---

## ■ PC Site Browser

Hiding navigation map for continuous scroll	➔ <i>Yahoo!</i> ➔  ➔ <i>PC Site Browser</i> ➔  ➔ <i>PC Site Browser Settings</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Scroll Settings</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Page Navigation</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Off</i> ➔
Changing scroll unit	➔ <i>Yahoo!</i> ➔  ➔ <i>PC Site Browser</i> ➔  ➔ <i>PC Site Browser Settings</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Scroll Settings</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Scroll Unit</i> ➔  ➔ Select unit ➔
Hiding PC Site Browser messages	➔ <i>Yahoo!</i> ➔  ➔ <i>PC Site Browser</i> ➔  ➔ <i>PC Site Browser Settings</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Warning Message</i> ➔  ➔ <i>PC Site Browser or Yahoo! Keitai</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Off</i> ➔



## Streaming

Customizing streaming settings	<p><b>Start Here</b>  While streaming,  ➔ <b>Settings</b> ➔ </p> <p>➔ <b>See below</b></p> <p><b>Changing Playback Size</b></p> <p><b>Display Size</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Select size</b> ➔ </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Playback size may not change depending on file/stream.</li> </ul> <p><b>Setting Backlight Status</b></p> <p><b>Backlight</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Select option</b> ➔ </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Selecting <b>Normal Settings</b> applies Display Backlight settings.</li> </ul> <p><b>Adjusting Sound Effects</b></p> <p><b>Sound Effects</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Select effect</b> ➔ </p>
	<p><b>Start Here</b>  ➔ <b>Media</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Streaming</b> ➔ </p> <p>➔ <b>See below</b></p> <p><b>Resuming from Stopped Point</b></p> <p><b>Last Played</b> ➔ </p>
	<p><b>Using Bookmarks</b></p> <p><b>Bookmarks</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Select title</b> ➔ </p>
	<p><b>Using History</b></p> <p><b>History</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Select record</b> ➔ </p>

## Streaming from Media Player

## Bookmarks

Deleting titles	<p><b>One Title</b></p> <p> ➔ <b>Select title</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Delete</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Yes</b> ➔ </p>
	<p><b>All Titles</b></p> <p> ➔  ➔ <b>Delete All</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Enter Handset Code</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Yes</b> ➔ </p>
Editing titles	<p> ➔ <b>Select title</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Edit</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Title:</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Enter title</b> ➔  ➔ </p>
Editing bookmarked URLs	<p> ➔ <b>Select title</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Edit</b> ➔  ➔ <b>URL:</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Edit</b> ➔  ➔ </p>
Sending bookmarked URLs via mail	<p> ➔ <b>Select title</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Send</b> ➔  ➔ <b>As Message</b> ➔  ➔ <b>S! Mail or SMS</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Complete message</b> ➔ </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.</li> </ul>
Changing title order	<p> ➔ <b>Select title</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Change Order</b> ➔ </p> <p>➔ <b>Select target location</b> ➔ </p>
Opening title properties	<p> ➔ <b>Select title</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Details</b> ➔ </p>



Sorting titles into folders

**Creating Folders**

☰ ➔ ☰ ➔ **Create Folder** ➔ ● ➔ Enter name ➔ ●

**Moving to Folders**

☰ ➔ Select title ➔ ☰ ➔ **Move** ➔ ● ➔ Select folder ➔ ● ➔ **Move** ➔ ●

**Moving from Folders**

☰ ➔ Select folder ➔ ● ➔ Select title ➔ ☰ ➔ **Move** ➔ ● ➔ **Move** ➔ ●

**Renaming Folders**

☰ ➔ Select folder ➔ ☰ ➔ **Rename** ➔ ● ➔ Enter name ➔ ●

**Deleting All Titles within a Folder**

☰ ➔ Select folder ➔ ● ➔ Select title ➔ ☰ ➔ **Delete All** ➔ ● ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ ● ➔ **Yes** ➔ ●

**Deleting Folders**

☰ ➔ Select folder ➔ ☰ ➔ **Delete** ➔ ● ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ ● ➔ **Yes** ➔ ●

**Saved Pages****Deleting pages**

☰ ➔ **Start Here** ➔ ● ➔ **Yahoo!** ➔ ● ➔ **Saved Pages** ➔ ● ➔ **See below**

**One Page**

Select page ➔ ☰ ➔ **Delete** ➔ ● ➔ **Yes** ➔ ●

**All Pages**

☰ ➔ **Delete All** ➔ ● ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ ● ➔ **Yes** ➔ ●

**Editing page titles**

☰ ➔ **Yahoo!** ➔ ● ➔ **Saved Pages** ➔ ● ➔ Select page ➔ ☰ ➔ **Rename** ➔ ● ➔ Enter title ➔ ●

**Changing page order**

☰ ➔ **Yahoo!** ➔ ● ➔ **Saved Pages** ➔ ● ➔ Select page ➔ ☰ ➔ **Change Order** ➔ ● ➔ Select target location ➔ ●

**Opening page properties**

☰ ➔ **Yahoo!** ➔ ● ➔ **Saved Pages** ➔ ● ➔ Select page ➔ ☰ ➔ **Details** ➔ ●

**Switching page list view**

☰ ➔ **Yahoo!** ➔ ● ➔ **Saved Pages** ➔ ● ➔ Select page ➔ ☰ ➔ **List View or Preview View** ➔ ●



## Security Settings

For PC Site Browser, perform the following sequence instead of **Browser Settings** ➤ [•].

**PC Site Browser** ➤ [•] ➤ **PC Site Browser Settings** ➤ [•]

Disabling manufacture number auto send for authentication	[•] ➤ <b>Yahoo!</b> ➤ [•] ➤ <b>Browser Settings</b> ➤ [•] ➤ <b>Security Settings</b> ➤ [•] ➤ <b>Manufacture Number</b> ➤ [•] ➤ <b>Off</b> ➤ [•]
Disabling referer information delivery to the Server	[•] ➤ <b>Yahoo!</b> ➤ [•] ➤ <b>Browser Settings</b> ➤ [•] ➤ <b>Security Settings</b> ➤ [•] ➤ <b>Send Referer</b> ➤ [•] ➤ <b>Not Send</b> ➤ [•]
Enabling/disabling cookies	[•] ➤ <b>Yahoo!</b> ➤ [•] ➤ <b>Browser Settings</b> ➤ [•] ➤ <b>Security Settings</b> ➤ [•] ➤ <b>Cookies</b> ➤ [•] ➤ <b>Select option</b> ➤ [•]
Selecting script execution option	[•] ➤ <b>Yahoo!</b> ➤ [•] ➤ <b>Browser Settings</b> ➤ [•] ➤ <b>Security Settings</b> ➤ [•] ➤ <b>Script Settings</b> ➤ [•] ➤ <b>Select option</b> ➤ [•]
Hiding confirmations before entering/exiting secure pages	[•] ➤ <b>Yahoo!</b> ➤ [•] ➤ <b>Browser Settings</b> ➤ [•] ➤ <b>Security Settings</b> ➤ [•] ➤ <b>Secure Prompt</b> ➤ [•] ➤ <b>Do not Show</b> ➤ [•]
Opening electronic certificates saved on handset	[•] ➤ <b>Yahoo!</b> ➤ [•] ➤ <b>Browser Settings</b> ➤ [•] ➤ <b>Security Settings</b> ➤ [•] ➤ <b>Root Certificates</b> ➤ [•] ➤ <b>Select certificate</b> ➤ [•]

Changing validity of entered user ID/ password

- [•] ➤ **Yahoo!** ➤ [•] ➤ **Browser Settings** ➤ [•] ➤ **Security Settings** ➤ [•] ➤ **Keep Auth Info** ➤ [•] ➤ **Select option** ➤ [•]
- **Per Browsing** retains entered user ID/password during browsing sessions. **On** retains such authentication information even after turning handset off.
- Authentication information may not be retained depending on the site.

Enabling/disabling Ajax (for asynchronous communication)

- [•] ➤ **Yahoo!** ➤ [•] ➤ **Browser Settings** ➤ [•] ➤ **Security Settings** ➤ [•] ➤ **Restrict Ajax** ➤ [•] ➤ **Select option** ➤ [•]

## Resetting

For PC Site Browser, perform the following sequence instead of **Browser Settings** ➤ [•].

**PC Site Browser** ➤ [•] ➤ **PC Site Browser Settings** ➤ [•]

Resetting browser settings and stored information (Bookmarks, Saved Pages, etc.)

- [•] ➤ **Yahoo!** ➤ [•] ➤ **Browser Settings** ➤ [•] ➤ **Initialized Browser** ➤ [•] ➤ **Enter Handset Code** ➤ [•] ➤ **Yes** ➤ [•]

Restoring default handset settings

- [•] ➤ **Yahoo!** ➤ [•] ➤ **Browser Settings** ➤ [•] ➤ **Reset Settings** ➤ [•] ➤ **Enter Handset Code** ➤ [•] ➤ **Yes** ➤ [•]



## Connecting & Browsing



### What is the bar at Display bottom?

- This is a data progress bar; the number beside it indicates transmitted (green) or received (red) data.

## Page Operations



### Internet page does not open completely

- Portions of page content may not appear in tabbed browsing; close other tabs.



### Text overlaps

- The site may be designed for browsing on PCs; try ***Tiny*** font size.
- Text may overlap when Zoom Factor is used; adjust scale.



<b>Camera</b> .....	<b>6-2</b>
Getting Started .....	6-2
<b>Photo Camera</b> .....	<b>6-4</b>
Capturing Still Images .....	6-4
<b>Video Camera</b> .....	<b>6-5</b>
Recording Video .....	6-5

<b>Shooting Modes</b> .....	<b>6-6</b>
Using Shooting Modes .....	6-6
<b>Editing Images</b> .....	<b>6-8</b>
Picture Editor .....	6-8
Composite .....	6-11
<b>Additional Functions</b> .....	<b>6-12</b>
<b>Troubleshooting</b> .....	<b>6-15</b>

# 6

## Camera & Imaging



## Getting Started

Capture still images or record video.

### Various Image Sizes

Select small sizes to send captured images/recorded video via S! Mail\*; select larger sizes for higher resolutions.

### Multiple Shooting Modes

Apply effect or add frame, use Self-timer or capture multiple images in rapid succession.

\*May not be delivered as sent depending on image/recording size or recipient device.

### Important Mobile Camera Usage Notes

- Clean dust/smudges from lens cover with soft dry cloth before use.
- Mobile camera is a precision instrument, however, some pixels may appear brighter or darker.
- Shooting/saving images while handset is hot may affect the image quality.
- Exposing lens to direct sunlight may damage color filter and affect image color.

#### Auto Shut-off

- Before image capture/recording, mobile camera shuts down after a period of inactivity and handset returns to Standby.

#### Shutter Click

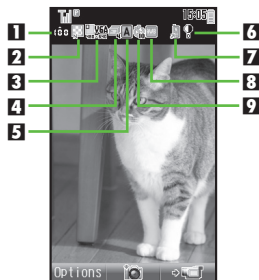
- Shutter click and Self-timer tone sound at fixed volume regardless of handset settings.



## Display Indicators

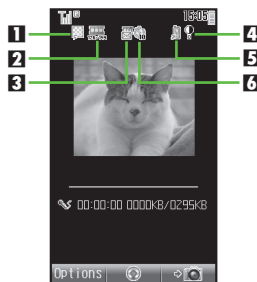
The following indicators appear at the top of Display.

### Photo Viewfinder



<b>1</b>	Memory	<b>6</b>	Exposure
<b>2</b>	Picture Quality	<b>7</b>	Save to
<b>3</b>	Picture Size	<b>8</b>	White Balance
<b>4</b>	Continuous Shoot	<b>9</b>	Self-timer
<b>5</b>	Scene		

### Video Viewfinder



<b>1</b>	Video Quality	<b>4</b>	Exposure
<b>2</b>	Record Size	<b>5</b>	Save to
<b>3</b>	Record Time	<b>6</b>	Self-timer

## Advanced

● Opening Help ● Reducing Display flicker (P.6-12)



## Capturing Still Images

1

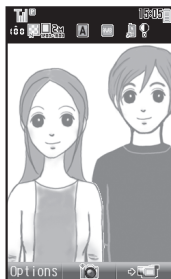
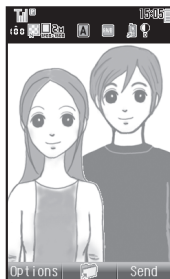


Photo Viewfinder

2 Frame subject on Display ➔



Captured Image Window

- Shutter clicks; captured image appears. (To discard file and start over, press .)

3

- Image is saved. (Viewfinder returns.)
- Open saved images via Data Folder.

4 ➔ **Camera shuts down**

**Sending Captured Images via S! Mail**

After , ➔ Complete message ➔

**Sending Captured Images via Infrared**

After , (Long) ➔ Yes ➔

- Set recipient device to ready beforehand.

### Pre-Image Capture Operations

Zoom In/Out	/
Toggle Mode	
Adjust Brightness	/
Change Image Size	5
Open Help	0

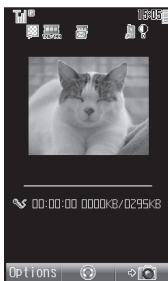
### Advanced

- Accessing files from Viewfinder • Adjusting brightness • Adjusting focus quickly for close-up shots • Changing shutter click sound • Changing image size • Changing mode according to lighting or subject • Adjusting image color to lighting conditions (And more on **P.6-12**)



## Recording Video

1 ➔



Video Viewfinder

- Omit step of pressing if Video Camera is already active.

2 **Frame subject on Display** ➔

- Recording starts after a tone. (To start over, press .)

3

- Recording stops with a tone. (To discard file and start over, press .)

4 **Save** ➔

- Video is saved. (Viewfinder returns.)
- Play saved video via Data Folder or Media Player.

5 ➔ **Camera shuts down**

### ■ Pre-Recording Operations

Zoom In/Out	/
Toggle Mode	
Adjust Brightness	/
Change Record Size	5
Open Help	

### Playing Unsaved Video

In 4, **Preview** ➔

### Sending Recorded Video via S! Mail

In 4, **Send** ➔ ➔ **Save and Send**

➔ ➔ **Complete message** ➔

- May not be delivered as sent depending on recording size or recipient device.

### Incoming Calls

- If a call arrives before video is saved, recorded clip is temporarily saved. End the call to return.

### If Battery Runs Low

- Recording stops. (Recorded clip is saved.)

### Pause

- Press to pause recording. (May be unavailable depending on recording size, etc.)

6

Camera & Imaging

## Advanced

- Accessing files from Viewfinder
- Adjusting focus quickly for close-up shots (And more on **P.6-12**)
- Changing recording time/size
- Enlarging Viewfinder size
- Recording video without sound (**P.6-13**)



## Using Shooting Modes

May be unavailable depending on selected image/recording size.

### Self-timer

#### 1 In Photo/Video Viewfinder,

➔ **Self-timer** ➔

#### 2 Select time ➔

#### 3 Frame subject on Display ➔

- After selected time elapses, captured image appears or recording starts.
- To stop recording, press .
- For more, see operation descriptions on P.6-4 or P.6-5.

#### Releasing Shutter during Countdown

After ,

#### Incoming Calls/Alarm during Countdown

- Countdown stops. (Self-timer remains active.)

### Continuous Shoot (Photo Camera)

Available Modes:

4 Pictures	Capture four separate images with Index Image
9 Pictures	Capture nine separate images with Index Image
Overlapped	Capture five images to create a composite image

#### 1 In Photo Viewfinder, ➔ **Modes** ➔



Mode Menu

#### 2 Continuous Shoot ➔

#### 3 Select mode ➔ ➔ Select speed ➔

#### 4 Frame subject on Display ➔

- After image capture, Index Image or a composite image appears.
- When shooting speed is set to **Manual** (4 Pictures and 9 Pictures modes), repeat 4 for each frame.

#### 5

#### 6 All Pictures ➔

- All captured images are saved.






#### Saving the Selected Image

After , (select image) ➔ ➔






**Selected Picture** ➔







## Adding Frames (Photo Camera)

- 1 In mode menu, **Add Frame** ➡ 
- 2 **Preset Frames** ➡ 
- 3 **Select frame** ➡ 
- 4 **Frame subject on Display** ➡ 
  - Captured image appears.
  - Press  to save image. (Viewfinder returns.)

## Using Frames in Data Folder

In , **Data Folder** ➡  ➡ **Select frame** ➡  ➡  ➡ **Frame subject on Display** ➡ 

## Camera Effects (Photo Camera)

- 1 In mode menu, **Camera Effects** ➡ 
- 2 **Select effect** ➡ 
- 3 **Frame subject on Display** ➡ 
  - Captured image appears.
  - Press  to save image. (Viewfinder returns.)





## Picture Editor

### Picture Editor Options

The following options are available. Some images may not be editable depending on file type and size.

<b>Resize</b>	Select from preset sizes or crop image
<b>Frame</b>	Add Frame to images
<b>Paste</b>	Add text/dates to images
<b>Retouch</b>	Dress up images with preloaded visual effects
<b>Stamp</b>	Add stamps to images
<b>Face Arrange</b>	Make smiley, angry or sad faces
<b>Correction</b>	Correct images
<b>Rotate</b>	Rotate images
<b>File Format</b>	Convert file format and change file size

### Basics Operations

1 ➔ **Pictures** ➔ ➔

2 ➔ **Edit** ➔

3 **Picture Editor** ➔



Picture Editor Menu

4 **Select effect** ➔ ➔ **Edit**  
• To start over, press .

5 **When finished**,

6 **Save as New** ➔

- To overwrite, select **Overwrite** and press . (Omit .)

7 **Enter name** ➔ ➔ **Save here** ➔

### Canceling Effects

After , **Undo** ➔

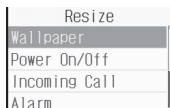
- To restore effect immediately after canceling, select **Redo** and press .

## Changing Image Size

Select from preset sizes or crop image.

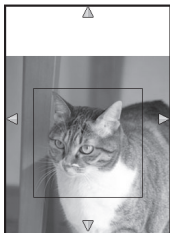
### Resize to Preset Size

- 1 In Picture Editor menu, **Resize** ➔



Resize Window

- 2 Select size ➔
- 3 Specify image area



• If crop frame does not appear, omit ③.

4

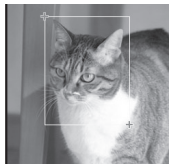
• Editing is complete.

### Zooming In/Out

After ③, ➔ ➔ 4

### Cropping Images

- 1 In Resize window, **Cut** ➔
- 2 Move + to the upper left corner of the portion to crop ➔



- 3 Move + to the lower right corner of the portion to crop ➔

4

• Editing is complete.

### Specifying Image Area

After ③, ➔ 4

### Zooming In/Out

After ③, ➔ ➔ 4

## Applying Visual Effects

Render in sepia tones or add blur, etc.

- 1 In Picture Editor menu, **Retouch** ➔

- 2 Select effect ➔

- 3
- Editing is complete.

### Adding Frames

- 1 In Picture Editor menu, **Frame** ➔

- 2 Select frame ➔

- 3
- Editing is complete.

## Advanced

Using additional editing options (P.6-13 - 6-14)



## Face Arrange

Make faces smiley, sad, etc.

- 1 In Picture Editor menu, **Face Arrange** ➡ 



Face Arrange Menu

- 2 Select type ➡ 

- 3 



- Editing is complete.

## Important Face Arrange Usage Note

- When using Face Arrange, take care not to create images that may embarrass or offend others. Always obtain permission before photographing others.

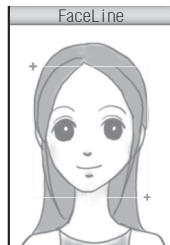
## Adjusting Positions

Change the default positions and sizes of targets to fit the image.

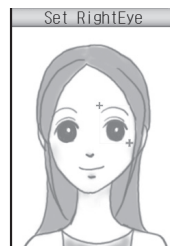
- 1 In Face Arrange menu,  ➡   
 • A rectangle appears with + in the upper left corner.

- 2  Move + to top left of face  
 ➡ 

- 3  Move + to bottom right of face



- 4 



- Face line is set. Set the eyes and then mouth in the same way.

- 5  ➡ **Yes** ➡  ➡ **Save here** ➡ 

- Image is saved as a new entry with Face Arrange positions adjusted. Complete Face Arrange. Face Arrange is applied to the adjusted positions.



# Composite

## Composite Options

The following options are available. Some images may not be editable depending on file type and size.

<b>Split Picture</b>	Combine up to four images into one
<b>Merge Panorama</b>	Combine two still images into one

## Panorama Images

Panorama Image Effects:

<b>Near View</b>	Best suited for close-up shots
<b>Document</b>	Use for images with text
<b>Standard</b>	Apply to other images

1 ➔ **Pictures** ➔ ➔ **Select image** ➔

2 ➔ **Edit** ➔

3 **Composite** ➔

4 **Merge Panorama** ➔



- File selected in 1 is set as left image.

5 **<Empty>** ➔ ➔ **Select image** ➔

6 **EFFECT** ➔ ➔ **Select effect** ➔

- Editing is complete.

7 **When finished,**



- Merged image appears.

8

9 **Enter name** ➔ ➔ **Save here** ➔

### Changing Images

After 8, select image ➔ ➔ ➔

Select image ➔

### Switching Image Positions

After 8,

6

Camera &amp; Imaging


## Advanced

Combining reduced images (P.6-14)










## Photo Camera & Video Camera









### General

Accessing files from Viewfinder	In Photo/Video Viewfinder,  ➔ <i>Data Folder</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Select file</i> ➔ 
Opening Help	In Photo/Video Viewfinder,  ➔ <i>Help</i> ➔  • Press  to toggle Help window for key assignments and indicator descriptions.
Reducing Display flicker	In Photo/Video Viewfinder,  ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Anti-flicker</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Mode 1: 50Hz</i> ➔ 

### Capturing















Adjusting brightness	In Photo/Video Viewfinder,  ➔ <i>Shooting Settings</i> or <i>Record Settings</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Exposure</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Adjust level</i>
Adjusting focus quickly for close-up shots	Slide Portrait/Macro Selector to Macro (  )
Changing image quality	In Photo/Video Viewfinder,  ➔ <i>Picture Quality</i> or <i>Video</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Select quality</i> ➔ 

### Saving











Activating automatic saving	In Photo/Video Viewfinder,  ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Auto Save</i> ➔  ➔ <i>On</i> ➔ 
Changing save location	In Photo/Video Viewfinder,  ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Save Pictures to</i> or <i>Save Videos to</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Select option</i> ➔ 

## Photo Camera

### General

Changing shutter click sound	In Photo Viewfinder,  ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔  ➔ <i>ShutterSound</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Select pattern</i> ➔  • Shutter click sound for Continuous Shoot is fixed.
Hiding indicators	In Photo Viewfinder,  ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Display Setting</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Icon Off</i> ➔ 
Selecting send option assigned to 	In Photo Viewfinder,  ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Set Send Key</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Short press</i> or <i>Long press</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Select option</i> ➔  • Change send option separately for each key press method.

### Capturing

Changing image size	In Photo Viewfinder,  ➔ <i>Picture Size</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Select size</i> ➔ 
Changing mode according to lighting or subject	In Photo Viewfinder,  ➔ <i>Scene</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Select mode</i> ➔ 
Adjusting image color to lighting conditions	In Photo Viewfinder,  ➔ <i>Shooting Settings</i> ➔  ➔ <i>White Balance</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Select mode</i> ➔ 



## Video Camera

## ■ Recording

Changing recording time/size	In Video Viewfinder,  ➔ <i>Record Time/Size</i> ➔  ➔ <i>For Message or Extended</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Select size</i> ➔
Enlarging Viewfinder size	In Video Viewfinder,  ➔ <i>Display Size</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Enlarge</i> ➔
Recording video without sound	In Video Viewfinder,  ➔ <i>Microphone</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Off</i> ➔


## Editing Images

## ■ Picture Editor

Using additional editing options	<p> ➔ <i>Pictures</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Select file</i> ➔  ➔  ➔ <i>Edit</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Picture Editor</i> ➔  ➔ </p> <p>See below</p>
	<p><b>Changing Text/Outline Color</b></p> <p><i>Paste</i> ➔  ➔  ➔ <i>Select text color</i> ➔  ➔  ➔ <i>Select outline color</i> ➔  ➔ </p>
	<p><b>Adding Text</b></p> <p><i>Paste</i> ➔  ➔  ➔ <i>Free Text</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Enter text</i> ➔  ➔  ➔ <i>Move text</i> ➔ </p>
	<p><b>Adding Dates</b></p> <p><i>Paste</i> ➔  ➔  ➔ <i>Date</i> ➔  ➔  ➔ <i>Move date</i> ➔ </p>
	<p><b>Adding Stamps</b></p> <p><i>Stamp</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Select stamp</i> ➔  ➔  ➔ <i>Move stamp</i> ➔ </p>
	<p><b>Correcting Image Parameters</b></p> <p><i>Correction</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Select type</i> ➔  ➔ </p>
	<p><b>Rotating Images</b></p> <p><i>Rotate</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Select type</i> ➔  ➔ </p>
	<p><b>Converting File Format</b></p> <p><i>File Format</i> ➔  ➔ <i>File Format</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Select format</i> ➔ </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changing file format may affect file size/image quality.</li> <li>To return to Picture Editor menu, press .</li> </ul>




## Using additional editing options

Start Here  ➔ **Pictures** ➔  ➔ **Select file** ➔   
 ➔  ➔ **Edit** ➔  ➔ **Picture Editor** ➔  ➔  
 See below




**Changing File Size**

**File Format** ➔  ➔ **File Size** ➔  ➔ **Select size** ➔ 

- Changing file size may affect image quality.
- To return to Picture Editor menu, press .

**Composite**

## Combining reduced images

Start Here  ➔ **Pictures** ➔  ➔ **Select file** ➔   
 ➔  ➔ **Edit** ➔  ➔ **Composite** ➔  ➔ **See below**

**Creating Split Picture**

**SplitPicture 240x400 or SplitPicture 240x320** ➔

 ➔ **<Empty>** ➔  ➔ **Select file** ➔  ➔

When finished,  ➔ **Enter name** ➔  ➔ **Save here** ➔ 

- Repeat from selecting **<Empty>** as needed.

**Previewing Split Picture**

While creating Split Picture,  ➔ **View Composite** ➔ 

**Changing Images**

While creating Split Picture, select image ➔   
 ➔  ➔ **Select another** ➔ 

**Deleting Images**

While creating Split Picture, select image ➔   
 ➔ **Remove** ➔  ➔ **Yes** ➔ 



## Mobile Camera



### Mobile camera won't activate/ shuts down automatically

- Battery may be low. Charge battery or install a charged battery.



### Cannot use Auto Save

- Auto Save is not available when SavePictures to is set to **Ask Each Time**.



### Viewfinder image is out-of-focus

- Portrait/Macro Selector may be set to . Slide it to for most shooting situations.

## Editing Images



### Cannot save/send edited images

- Edited images may be too large to save or send via mail.



<b>Media Player .....</b>	<b>7-2</b>
Media Basics .....	7-2
<b>Music .....</b>	<b>7-4</b>
Playing Music.....	7-4
<b>Video .....</b>	<b>7-5</b>
Playing Video.....	7-5

<b>Playlists .....</b>	<b>7-6</b>
Using Playlists .....	7-6
<b>S! Appli .....</b>	<b>7-7</b>
Using S! Applications .....	7-7
<b>Additional Functions .....</b>	<b>7-8</b>
<b>Troubleshooting.....</b>	<b>7-12</b>

# 7

## Media Player & S! Applications



## Media Basics

Use Media Player to play music/video on 840SH.

- Download media files from Mobile Internet sites via Media Player directly.
- Transfer PC music files and save them on Memory Card.

### Music File Support

#### My Music

(Handset/Memory Card)  
Downloads/Transferred Files

### Video File Support

#### My Videos

(Handset/Memory Card)  
Downloads/Recorded Files

### Playback Precautions

- Media Player is not compatible with some recording/playback formats. Files may not play depending on the Memory Card status.
- Playback stops for incoming calls.
- If battery is low, Media Player will not play. Playback stops if battery runs low during playback.
- Turn down the volume if distortion is noticeable in Speaker sound.

### Compatibility

- Files transferred from PCs cannot be used as ringtones or System Sounds.

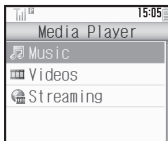
### Streaming

- Handset plays media while it downloads.
  - Packet transmission fees apply even while stream is paused.
  - Downloaded content cannot be saved.



## Downloading Media Files

Download media files from the Internet. Read information (price, expiry date, etc.) on the source site.



- Follow the links to download media.

## Saving Music Files from PCs

- Use software to convert music file format.
- For software usage and specifications, see the provider's website, etc.
- SoftBank Mobile does not guarantee compatibility with any software.
- USB Cable may be purchased separately.

### Handling Transferred Files

- Copyright laws limit duplicated material to private use only.
- Files created with PC software, etc. may not play.
- Comply with copyright and other intellectual property laws when using obtained files.

## Saving AAC Files

Convert PC music files to 840SH-compatible format (P.14-20), then save to corresponding Memory Card folder (P.14-22) via Mass Storage. Install USB Cable driver beforehand.



# Playing Music

1 **Media** **Music**

2 **My Music** **Select**  
tab (folder)



3 **All Music**

4 **Select file**



Music Playback Window

- Album art appears for compatible Chaku-Uta Full® files.

## Using Other Functions while Playing Music

After 4, or

- To stop playback, follow these steps in Standby:

**Yes**

## Searching Music Files

After , **Search** **Enter**  
search text

## Lyric Display-Compatible Files

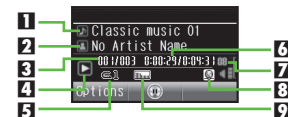
- Press to display lyrics.

## Music Playback Operations

Replay	(Long Press: Rewind*)
Skip Forward	(Long Press: Fast Forward*)
Volume Down	(Long Press: Mute)
Volume Up or Cancel Mute	
Pause	
Stop	In Pause,
Open Help	

\*Release for playback.

## Music Playback Window Description



1	Title	6	Elapsed time
2	Artist name	7	Volume
3	Track number	8	Information link
4	Status	9	Sound Effects
5	Playback Mode		

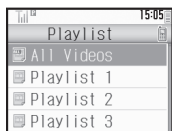
## Advanced

- Resuming from stopped point
- Specifying start point
- Accessing linked information
- Playing repeatedly or randomly
- Changing Sound Effects (P.7-8)

## Playing Video

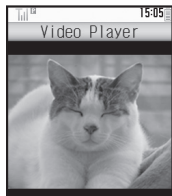
1 ➔ **Media** ➔ ➔ **Videos**  
➔

2 **My Videos** ➔ ➔ **Phone Memory or Memory Card** ➔



3 **All Videos** ➔

4 **Select file** ➔



Video Playback Window

5 ➔ **Playback stops**

### Searching Video Files

After , ➔ **Search** ➔ ➔ Enter search text ➔

### At Alarm Time

- Playback pauses.

### Video Recorded on Other Devices

- Video image may appear rotated.

### Video Playback Operations

For pause, volume up/down or help, see P.7-4 "Music Playback Operations."

<b>Replay</b>	(Long Press: Rewind*)
<b>Skip Forward</b>	(Long Press in Pause: Advance Frame, Long Press: Fast Forward*)
<b>Toggle Display Size</b>	

\*Release for playback.

### Video Playback Window Description



1	Title	6	Elapsed time
2	Author name	7	Volume
3	Clip number	8	Information link
4	Status	9	Sound Effects
5	Playback Mode		

7

Media Player &amp; SI Applications

### Advanced

- Resuming from stopped point ● Specifying start point ● Accessing linked information ● Playing repeatedly or randomly ● Changing Sound Effects  
● Changing playback size ● Setting Backlight status ● Hiding linked information (P.7-8)



## Using Playlists

Playlists store playback orders. Add favorite media files to Playlists, or organize files by artist/genre. Playlists store only file locations. Source files remain in All Music or All Videos.

### Adding to Playlist

Follow these steps to add a music file to プレイリスト 1:

① ➡ **Media** ➡ ➡ **Music** ➡

② **My Music** ➡



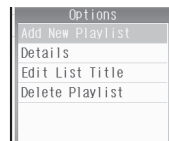
Playlists Window

③ **All Music** ➡ ➡ **Select file** ➡

④ **Add to Playlist** ➡ ➡ **プレイリスト 1** ➡

### Renaming Playlists

① In Playlists window, select Playlist ➡



② **Edit List Title** ➡ ➡ **Enter name** ➡



### Advanced

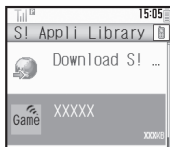
- ① Organizing Playlists
- ② Sorting files
- ③ Opening properties
- ④ Downloading Contents Keys (P.7-9)
- ⑤ Organizing Playlists
- ⑥ Sorting files
- ⑦ Downloading Contents Keys
- ⑧ Opening properties (P.7-9)



## Using S! Applications

Try out the preloaded S! Applications or download and use 840SH-compatible S! Applications, including games. Refer to the S! Application's help menu or the source Internet site, etc. for operational instructions.

- 1 ➔ **S! Appli** ➔
- 2 **S! Appli Library** ➔



S! Appli Library

- 3 **Select application** ➔

### Network S! Applications

- A message appears indicating that Internet connection is required. Follow onscreen instructions.

### Incoming Calls

- Incoming calls automatically pause S! Application.

## Exiting S! Applications

- 1



- 2 **End** ➔

### Pausing S! Applications

In , **Suspend** ➔

### Resuming S! Applications

➔ **Resume** ➔

- Select **Cancel** to open Main Menu and keep the S! Application paused. (Additional function activation may be disabled depending on the S! Application.)
- Select **End** to exit the S! Application.

7

Media Player &amp; S! Applications

## Advanced

- Downloading S! Applications ● Adjusting S! Application sound volume ● Canceling surround effect ● Setting handset responses to incoming transmissions ● Setting S! Application to activate in Standby ● Setting Permissions ● Opening properties (P.7-10)
- Moving S! Applications to Memory Card ● Changing S! Application settings ● Deleting S! Applications ● Restoring default S! Application settings
- Restoring default S! Appli Library ● Synchronizing Memory Card S! Applications with 840SH ● Opening Java™ license information (P.7-11)



## Media Playback

### Music & Video

Resuming from stopped point	➔ <i>Media</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Music or Videos</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Last Played Music or Last Played Video</i> ➔
Specifying start point	During playback,  ➔ <i>Time Search</i> ➔  ➔ Enter time ➔
Accessing linked information	During playback,  ➔ <i>Access Web Link</i> ➔  ➔ Yes ➔

### Music


Playing repeatedly or randomly	During playback,  ➔ <i>Playback Mode</i> ➔  ➔ See below
	<i>Repeat One File</i> <i>Repeat</i> ➔
	<i>Repeat All Files</i> <i>Repeat All</i> ➔
	<i>Play Randomly</i> <i>Random</i> ➔
	<i>Repeat Randomly</i> <i>Random Repeat</i> ➔
Changing Sound Effects	During playback,  ➔ <i>Sound Effects</i> ➔  ➔ Select effect ➔

### Video


Playing repeatedly or randomly	During playback,  ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Playback Mode</i> ➔  ➔ See below
	<i>Repeat One File</i> <i>Repeat</i> ➔
	<i>Repeat All Files</i> <i>Repeat All</i> ➔
	<i>Play Randomly</i> <i>Random</i> ➔
Changing Sound Effects	During playback,  ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Sound Effects</i> ➔  ➔ Select effect ➔
Changing playback size	During playback,  ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Display Size</i> ➔  ➔ Select size ➔
Setting Backlight status	During playback,  ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Backlight</i> ➔  ➔ Select option ➔ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Selecting <i>Normal Settings</i> applies Display Backlight settings.</li> </ul>
Hiding linked information	During playback,  ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔  ➔ <i>Web Link Setting</i> ➔  ➔ Off ➔



## Managing Music Files

Organizing Playlists	<p>Start Here → Media → Music → My Music → Select tab (folder) → See below</p> <p><b>Adding New Playlists</b></p> <p>Add New Playlist → Enter name</p> <p><b>Deleting Playlists</b></p> <p>Select Playlist → Delete Playlist → Yes</p> <p><b>Deleting Playlist Files</b></p> <p>Select Playlist → Select file → Delete → Yes</p> <p><b>Changing File Order</b></p> <p>Select Playlist → Select file → Change Order → Select target location</p>
	<p>Media → Music → My Music → Select tab (folder) → All Music → Sort → Select option</p>
	<p>Media → Music → My Music → Select tab (folder) → Select Playlist → Select file → Details</p>
	<p>Media → Music → My Music → Select tab (folder) → Select Playlist → Select file (with ) → Yes</p> <p>• Follow onscreen instructions.</p>
Sorting files	
Opening properties	
Downloading Contents Keys	

## Managing Video Files

Organizing Playlists	<p>Start Here → Media → Videos → My Videos → Phone Memory or Memory Card → See below</p> <p><b>Adding New Playlists</b></p> <p>Add New Playlist → Enter name</p> <p><b>Deleting Playlists</b></p> <p>Select Playlist → Delete Playlist → Yes</p> <p><b>Deleting Playlist Files</b></p> <p>Select Playlist → Select file → Delete → Yes</p> <p><b>Changing File Order</b></p> <p>Select Playlist → Select file → Change Order → Select target location</p>
	<p>Media → Videos → My Videos → Phone Memory or Memory Card → All Videos → Sort → Select option</p>
	<p>Media → Videos → My Videos → Phone Memory or Memory Card → All Videos → Select file (with ) → Yes</p> <p>• Follow onscreen instructions.</p>
Sorting files	
Downloading Contents Keys	
Opening properties	<p>Media → Videos → My Videos → Phone Memory or Memory Card → Select Playlist → Select file → Details</p>



## S! Applications

Downloading S! Applications	<p>  ➔ <b>S! Appli</b> ➔  ➔ <b>S! Appli Library</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Download S! Appli</b> ➔  </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Follow onscreen instructions.</li> </ul>
Adjusting S! Application sound volume	<p>  ➔ <b>S! Appli</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Settings</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Application Volume</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Adjust level</b> ➔  </p>
Canceling surround effect	<p>  ➔ <b>S! Appli</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Settings</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Surround</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Off</b> ➔  </p>
Setting handset responses to incoming transmissions	<p>  ➔  ➔ <b>S! Appli</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Settings</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Calls &amp; Alarms</b> ➔  ➔ <b>See below</b> </p> <p><b>Showing Calls</b></p> <p>Select item ➔  ➔ <b>Show Call Notice</b> ➔ </p> <p><b>Pausing S! Application for Incoming Mail</b></p> <p>Incoming Message ➔  ➔ <b>Message Priority</b> ➔ </p> <p><b>Showing Alarm Notice</b></p> <p>Alarm ➔  ➔ <b>Alarm Notice</b> ➔ </p> <p><b>Showing Incoming S! Appli Request Notice</b></p> <p>Notification ➔  ➔ <b>Start Notice</b> ➔ </p>

	<p>  ➔  ➔ <b>S! Appli</b> ➔  ➔ <b>See below</b> </p> <p><b>Activating Screensaver</b></p> <p>Settings ➔  ➔ <b>Screensaver</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Switch On/Off</b> ➔  ➔ <b>On</b> ➔ </p> <p><b>Setting Screensaver</b></p> <p><b>S! Appli Library</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Select application</b> ➔  ➔ <b>As Screensaver</b> ➔ </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>As Screensaver</b> appears for compatible S! Applications.</li> <li>Screensaver may not start or operate correctly when an external device (Headphones, etc.) is connected to handset.</li> </ul> <p><b>Changing Screensaver Activation Time</b></p> <p>Settings ➔  ➔ <b>Screensaver</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Activation Time</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Enter time</b> ➔ </p> <p><b>Disabling Automatic Screensaver Restart</b></p> <p>Settings ➔  ➔ <b>Screensaver</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Stop Auto Start</b> ➔  ➔ <b>On</b> ➔ </p>
Setting Permissions	<p>  ➔  ➔ <b>S! Appli</b> ➔  ➔ <b>S! Appli Library</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Select application</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Permission</b> ➔  ➔ <b>See below</b> </p> <p><b>Customizing Permissions for S! Appli Operations</b></p> <p>Select item ➔  ➔ <b>Select option</b> ➔ </p> <p><b>Resetting Permission Settings</b></p> <p>Reset Settings ➔  ➔ <b>Yes</b> ➔ </p>
Opening properties	<p>  ➔ <b>S! Appli</b> ➔  ➔ <b>S! Appli Library</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Select application</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Details</b> ➔  </p>



Moving S! Applications to Memory Card	<p>  → <b>S! Appli</b> →  → <b>S! Appli Library</b> →  →  → <b>Select application</b> →  (  /  ) → <b>Complete selection</b> →  → <b>Move to Card</b> →  </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When an older version of the S! Application is saved, choose <b>Yes</b> or <b>No</b> and press .</li> <li>Repeat application selection step as needed before pressing .</li> <li>Some S! Applications may not be moved to Memory Card.</li> </ul>
Changing S! Application settings	<p>  →  → <b>S! Appli</b> →  → <b>Settings</b> →  </p> <p>→ See below</p> <p><b>Setting Backlight Status</b></p> <p><b>Backlight</b> →  → <b>Switch On/Off</b> →  →</p> <p><b>Select option</b> → </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Selecting <b>Normal Settings</b> applies Display Backlight settings.</li> </ul> <p><b>Disabling Backlight Flashing</b></p> <p><b>Backlight</b> →  → <b>Blink</b> →  → <b>Off</b> → </p> <p><b>Disabling Vibration</b></p> <p><b>Vibration</b> →  → <b>Off</b> → </p>
Deleting S! Applications	<p>  → <b>S! Appli</b> →  → <b>S! Appli Library</b> →  → <b>Select application</b> →  → <b>Delete</b> →  → <b>Yes</b> →  </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Handset Code may be required.</li> <li>Cancel Screensaver to delete Screensaver S! Application.</li> </ul>

Restoring default S! Application settings	<p>  → <b>S! Appli</b> →  → <b>Settings</b> →  → <b>Set to Default</b> →  → <b>Enter Handset Code</b> →  → <b>Yes</b> →  </p>
Restoring default S! Appli Library	<p>  → <b>S! Appli</b> →  → <b>S! Appli Library</b> →  → <b>Settings</b> →  → <b>Memory All Clear</b> →  → <b>Enter Handset Code</b> →  → <b>Yes</b> →  </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Memory All Clear deletes all downloaded S! Applications.</li> </ul>
Synchronizing Memory Card S! Applications with 840SH	<p>  → <b>S! Appli</b> →  → <b>Settings</b> →  → <b>Synchronization</b> →  → <b>Yes</b> →  </p>
Opening Java™ license information	<p>  → <b>S! Appli</b> →  → <b>Information</b> →  </p>



## Music

### ? How do I delete files in All Music?

- Delete All Music files in My Music via Data Folder (Music or Ring Songs/Tones).

## Video

### ? How do I delete files in All Videos?

- Delete All Videos files via Data Folder (Videos).

### ? Cannot play video files

- Files created with PC software, etc. may not play.

## S! Applications

### ? Cannot move S! Applications to Memory Card

- Memory Card memory may be low or the S! Application may already be saved.

### ? S! Applications do not pause for incoming transmissions despite *Calls & Alarms* settings

- Regardless of setting, a notice appears for Screensaver S! Applications.



<b>Calendar &amp; Tasks .....</b>	<b>8-2</b>
Calendar .....	8-2
Tasks .....	8-5
<b>Alarms .....</b>	<b>8-7</b>
Using Alarms .....	8-7
<b>Stopwatch .....</b>	<b>8-9</b>
Using Stopwatch .....	8-9
<b>Countdown Timer .....</b>	<b>8-10</b>
Using Countdown Timer .....	8-10

<b>Calculator .....</b>	<b>8-11</b>
Using Calculator .....	8-11
<b>Notepad .....</b>	<b>8-12</b>
Saving Text .....	8-12
<b>Voice Recorder .....</b>	<b>8-13</b>
Recording/Playing Voice .....	8-13
<b>Scan Barcode .....</b>	<b>8-14</b>
Scanning Barcodes .....	8-14
<b>Additional Functions .....</b>	<b>8-15</b>
<b>Troubleshooting .....</b>	<b>8-22</b>

# 8

## Handy Extras

## Calendar

### Opening Calendar

1



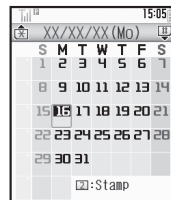
Calendar Window

### Opening Help

[Calendar Window]

### Toggling View

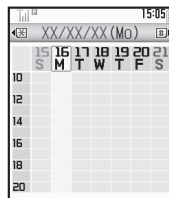
Press to toggle Calendar window:



1Month View



2Month View



Week View

### Key Assignments

#### All Views

Open Previous Page	
Open Next Page	
Go to Current Date	
Open Help	

#### 1Month/2Month View

Select Date	
-------------	--

#### Week View

Select Date	
Select Time Block	

### Advanced

- Changing default view
- Jumping to specified date
- Changing date color
- Selecting task view option
- Adding stamps (1Month View)
- Hiding schedules
- Saving additional holidays
- Hiding/showing holidays (P.8-15)

## Saving Schedules

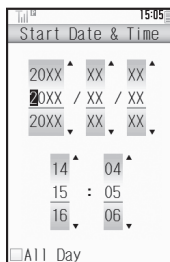
Follow these steps to save subject, start/end date/time, Alarm and schedule details: (Enter Subject or Description to save entry.)

- 1** In Calendar window, select date ➡



- 2** <Add New Entry> ➡

- 3** Enter subject ➡



- 4** Enter start date/time ➡



- 5** End: ➡ ➡ Enter end date/time ➡

- 6** Alarm: ➡

- 7** Alarm Time: ➡ ➡ Select time ➡ ➡

- 8** Description: ➡ ➡ Enter schedule details ➡

- 9** ➡ Saved

### All-Day Schedule

In **4**, ➡ ➡ From **8**

### Custom Alarm Time

In **7**, Alarm Time: ➡ ➡ Other ➡

➡ Enter date/time ➡ ➡

From **8**

## At Alarm Time

Alarm activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.



### Stopping Alarm to Return to Standby

- While Alarm sounds/vibrates, press , or .

### Stopping Alarm to Open Schedule

- While Alarm sounds/vibrates, press a key other than , or .

### When Another Function is Active

- Alarm may not activate until handset returns to Standby.

### Incoming Calls

- Active Alarm stops for incoming calls. Information window opens after handset returns to Standby.

## Advanced

- Setting Category/Location ● Saving repetitive schedules ● Editing entries ● Changing Alarm tone/video & duration ● Changing Alarm volume ● Selecting Vibration option (And more on P.8-15 - 8-16)

## Opening Schedules/Tasks

- 1 In Calendar window, select date ➡



Schedule List

- 2 Select schedule or task ➡
- 3 ➡ Standby returns

## Opening Task List

In 2, select task ➡ ➡ Go to Tasks ➡

## Accessing Secret Entries

[Calendar Window] ➡ Unlock Temporarily ➡ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡

## Opening Related Message

Open schedule-related messages saved from Messaging message list.

- 1 In schedule list, select schedule ➡
- 2 ➡ Related Mail ➡
  - Related message opens.
  - To return to schedule window, press .

## Deleting Message from Schedule

After 1, ➡ Related Mail: ➡ ➡ Yes ➡ ➡

## Deleting Schedules

## One Entry

- 1 In schedule list, select schedule ➡
  - 2 Delete ➡
  - 3 This Appointment ➡ ➡ Yes ➡
- All Entries of the Day
- 1 In Calendar window, select date ➡
  - 2 Delete ➡
  - 3 All This Day ➡ ➡ Yes ➡

## Advanced

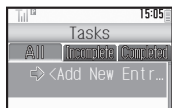
- Searching entries by part of subject ● Searching entries by Category ● Checking memory status ● Deleting all entries ● Deleting entries within one week (Week View) ● Deleting entries up to the end of previous week (Week View) ● Deleting entries within one month (1Month View) ● Deleting entries up to the end of previous month (1Month View) ● Deleting entries in two months (2Month View) (P.8-16)

# Tasks

## Saving Tasks

Follow these steps to save subject, due date/time, Alarm and task details:  
(Enter Subject or Description to save entry.)

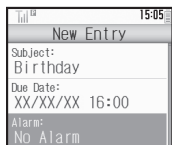
**1** **Tools** **Tasks**



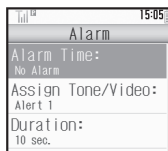
**2** **<Add New Entry>**

**3** Enter subject

**4** Enter due date/time



**5** **Alarm:**



**6** **Alarm Time:** **Select time**

**7** **Description:** **Enter task details**

**8** **Saved**

### Task with No Due Date/Time

In **4**, **From**

### Custom Alarm Time

In **6**, **Alarm Time:** **Other**

**From**

## Advanced

- Hiding tasks
- Editing tasks
- Setting priority
- Changing Alarm tone/video & duration
- Changing Alarm volume
- Selecting Vibration option
- Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode (P.8-17)

**At Alarm Time**

Alarm activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.

**Stopping Alarm to Return to Standby**

- While Alarm sounds/vibrates, press or .

**Stopping Alarm to Open Task**

- While Alarm sounds/vibrates, press a key other than , , or .

**When Another Function is Active**

- Alarm may not activate until handset returns to Standby.

**Incoming Calls**

- Active Alarm stops for incoming calls. Information window opens after handset returns to Standby.

**Opening Tasks**

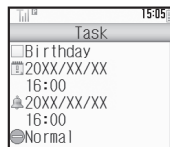
- ➔ **Tools** ➔ ➔ **Tasks** ➔



Task List

- Use to open Completed or Incomplete task list.

- Select task ➔



- ➔ **Standby** returns

**Accessing Secret Entries**

After , ➔ **Unlock Temporarily** ➔

➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔

**Marking Tasks as Completed**

After , select task ➔

**Deleting Tasks****One Entry**

- In task list, select task ➔

- Delete** ➔

- This Task** ➔ ➔ **Yes** ➔

**All Completed Tasks**

- In task list,

- Delete** ➔

- All Comp. Tasks** ➔ ➔ **Yes** ➔

**Advanced**

- Searching tasks ● Sorting tasks by priority ● Checking memory status ● Deleting all tasks (P.8-17)

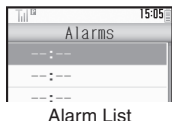
# Using Alarms

## Setting Alarm

Follow these steps to set Alarm to sound at a specific time on a specific day of the week:

(Set Snooze--Alarm repeats at set interval--Alarm Volume and Duration.)

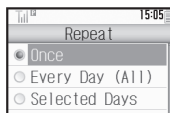
- 1 ➔ **Tools** ➔ ➔ **Alarms**



- 2 --:-- ➔ ➔ **Enter hour**  
(24-hour format) ➔ **Enter minutes** ➔



- 3 **Repeat:** ➔



- 4 **Selected Days** ➔

- 5 **Select day** ➔ (/☑) ➔  
**Complete selection** ➔

- 6 **Snooze:** ➔

- 7 **Select interval** ➔

• For custom intervals, select **Other**.

- 8 **Alarm Volume:** ➔

- 9 **Adjust level** ➔

- 10 **Duration:** ➔

- 11 **Select time** ➔

• For custom Duration, select **Other**.

- 12 ➔ **Saved**

• For more settings, repeat 2 - 12.

- 13 ➔ **Standby returns**

### Activating Alarm Once or Daily

In 4, **Once or Every Day (All)** ➔   
➔ **From** 6

### Selecting/Canceling All Days

In 5, ☐ ➔ **Check All or Uncheck All**  
➔

### Excluding Holidays

In 5, select day ➔ (/☑) ➔  
**Complete selection** ➔ **Except Holidays** ➔ (☑) ➔ ➔ **From** 6

## Advanced

- Editing entries ● Saving entry name ● Changing Alarm tone/video ● Setting handset to vibrate at Alarm Time ● Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode (P.8-18)

## At Alarm Time

Alarm activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.



## Stopping Alarm

- Press a key.

## When Another Function is Active

- Alarm may not activate until handset returns to Standby.

## Incoming Calls

- Active Alarm stops for incoming calls. Information window opens after handset returns to Standby.

## When Snooze is Set

Alarm repeats at the set interval. Other Alarms do not activate while handset is Snoozing.

## Canceling Snooze

While Snoozing, ☐ ➔ Yes ➔ ☐

- Snooze is automatically canceled after a period of time.

## Canceling Alarm

1 In Alarm list, select entry ➔

2 Switch Off ➔ ☐

- Reactivate entry to use the same settings.

## Reactivating Entry

In , Switch On ➔ ☐

## Deleting Alarm

## One Entry

1 In Alarm list, select entry ➔

2 Reset Alarm ➔ ☐

3 Yes ➔ ☐

## All Entries

1 In Alarm list, select entry ➔

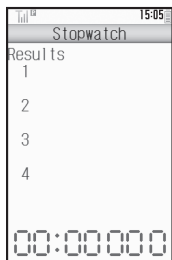
2 Clear All ➔ ☐

3 Enter Handset Code ➔ ☐  
➔ Yes ➔ ☐

## Using Stopwatch

Stopwatch stops if battery runs low.

- 1  ➔ **Tools** ➔  ➔ **Stopwatch** ➔ 



- 2  ➔ **Stopwatch starts**

- 3  ➔ **Stopwatch stops**  
 • Press  to resume.

- 4  ➔ **Yes** ➔  ➔ **Stopwatch ends**

- Records are deleted when Stopwatch ends.

### Recording Lap Times

While Stopwatch is running, 

### Saving Records to Notepad

After ③,  ➔ **Save to Notepad** ➔ 

### Resetting Records

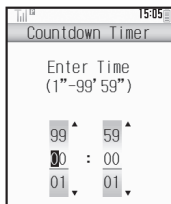
After ③,  ➔ **From** ②

### Incoming Calls

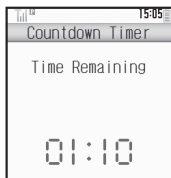
- Stopwatch is not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.

## Using Countdown Timer

- 1** **Countdown Timer**



- 2** **Enter minutes** **Enter seconds**



- Press to change time.

- 3** **Countdown starts**  
 • Press to stop/resume countdown.

- 4** **Set time elapses** **Tone sounds**

- 5** **Yes**   
**Countdown Timer ends**

### Using Timer Records

After **1**, **Select record**

**From**

### Resetting Timer

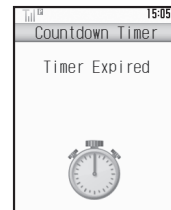
Stop countdown and

### Incoming Calls

- Countdown is not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.

### When Set Time Elapses

Tone sounds.



### Stopping Tone Instantly

- Press or a Side Key. (Tone stops automatically after a period of time.)

### When Timer Time Elapsed during a Call

- Tone sounds after the call.

# Using Calculator

- 1 ➔ **Tools** ➔ ➔ **Calculator** ➔



Calculator Window

- 2 **Use Keypad to enter digits**  
➔ **Calculate**

- 3 ➔ **Standby returns**

## Key Assignments

<b>+</b> (Add)	
<b>-</b> (Subtract)	
<b>x</b> (Multiply)	
<b>÷</b> (Divide)	
<b>=</b> (Sum)	
<b>C-CE</b> (Clear)	
<b>CM</b> (Clear Memory)	
<b>RM</b> (Recall Memory)	
<b>M+</b> (Add to Memory)	
<b>.</b> (Decimal)	
<b>+/-</b> (Positive/Negative Value)	
<b>%</b> (Percentage)	

## Memory Calculation

- Clear Memory before starting new Memory calculations.
- Numbers saved in Memory remain until handset power is turned off.

## Incoming Calls

- Calculations are not affected. End the call to return to Calculator.

## Using % Function

Use to find definite percentage of a known value.

Example: Calculate 30% of 800,000

- Enter 800,000 ➔ x ➔ 30 ➔ %**  
■ **240,000** appears.

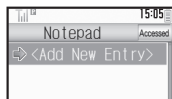
## Advanced

- Copying calculation results ● Changing exchange rate for currency conversion ● Converting currencies (P.8-18)

## Saving Text

### New Notepad Entry

- 1 ➔ **Tools** ➔ ➔ **Notepad** ➔



Notepad List

- 2 **<Add New Entry>** ➔
- 3 Enter text ➔
- 4 Select Category ➔ ➔ **Saved**

### Sorting Entries Temporarily

[Notepad List]

- Press to toggle sort options (Modified, Created, Category and Accessed).

### Inserting Notepad Text during Text Entry

[Text Entry Window] ➔ **Notepad**

➔ ➔ **Call Notepad** ➔

Select entry ➔

### Opening Notepad

- 1 In Notepad list, select entry ➔

- 2 ➔ **List returns**

### Deleting Entries

#### One Entry

- 1 In Notepad list, select entry ➔

- 2 **Delete Item** ➔

- 3 **Yes** ➔

#### All Entries

- 1 In Notepad list, select entry ➔ ➔ **Setting/Manage** ➔

- 2 **Delete All** ➔

- 3 Enter Handset Code ➔ ➔ **Yes** ➔

### Advanced

1

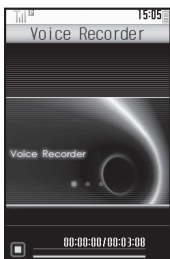
- Editing Notepad
- Searching text within all entries
- Inserting Notepad text into message text
- Sending entries via S! Mail
- Creating text files
- Importing text files
- Checking memory status
- Opening properties (P.8-19)

## Recording/Playing Voice

### Recording

- Recording stops if battery runs low while recording.
- Record conversations during calls via **Record Caller Voice**.

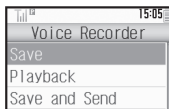
1 ➔ **Tools** ➔ ➔ **Voice Recorder** ➔



Recording Window

2 ➔ **Recording starts**

3 ➔ **Recording ends**



- For **Extended Voice**, recording is saved automatically.

4 **Save** ➔

#### Play Before Saving

In 4, **Playback** ➔ ➔ **Playback starts** ➔ ➔ **Playback stops**  
**Starting Over**  
 In 4, ➔ **From** 2

### Playback

1 In recording window, ➔ **Ring Songs·Tones** ➔

2 **Select file** ➔

#### Playing Files via Data Folder

➔ **Ring Songs·Tones** ➔ ➔ **Select file** ➔

#### Playback Operations

Volume Control	
Pause/Resume	
Stop	

### Advanced

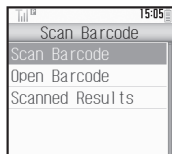
- Saving longer recordings ● Sending Voice files via S! Mail ● Switching storage media (P.8-19)

## Scanning Barcodes

Scan UPC/JAN (1D barcodes) or QR Codes (2D barcodes).

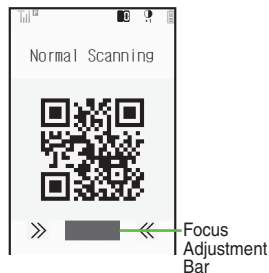
- Slide Portrait/Macro Selector to Macro (🌸) beforehand.
- Some barcodes may not be scanned.

**1** ➔ **Tools** ➔ ➔ **Barcode/Scan** ➔



**2** **Scan Barcode** ➔

**3** **Frame barcode in center of Display**



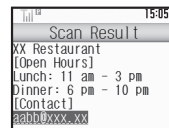
Scan Window

- Use Focus Adjustment Bar as a guide (better focus in darker blue).

**4** ➔ **Scan starts**

- If recognition takes time, slowly adjust the distance between handset and barcode.
- Press to stop scan.

**5** **Tone sounds ➔ Scan results appear**



### Split Data

- After scanning, a confirmation appears. Follow onscreen prompt(s).
- Scan results do not appear until all split data is scanned.

### Starting Over

After , ➔ **Yes** ➔ ➔ **From**

### Key Assignments in Scan Window

Switch to Photo Camera	
Adjust Brightness	
Open Help	

### Advanced

- Scanning during text entry • Scanning continuously • Reading saved barcode images • Saving scan results • Saving to Notepad • Saving linked info to Phone Book • Opening saved scan results • Using linked info • Using images as Wallpaper • Saving images & melodies • Copying text (And more on P.8-20 - 8-21)

Calendar	
■ View Settings	
Changing default view	<b>Calendar Settings</b> <b>Default View</b> <b>Select type</b>
Jumping to specified date	<b>Enter date</b>
Changing date color	<b>Start Here</b> <b>Calendar Settings</b> <b>Set Color</b>
	<b>By Days of the Week</b> <b>By Week</b> <b>Select day</b> <b>Select color</b>
	<b>By Date</b> <b>Select color</b>
	<b>Resetting "By Date" Colors</b> <b>Reset Color</b> <b>Select option</b> <b>Yes</b>
Selecting task view option	<b>Calendar Settings</b> <b>Tasks View</b> <b>Select option</b>
Adding stamps (1Month View)	<b>Select date</b> <b>Select stamp</b> • Available in 1Month View.
Hiding schedules	<b>Select date</b> <b>Select entry</b> <b>Secret:</b> <b>On</b>

Saving additional holidays	<b>Start Here</b> <b>Calendar Settings</b> <b>Set Holiday</b> <b>Private</b>
	<b>Adding Holidays</b> <b>&lt;Empty&gt;</b> <b>Enter name</b> <b>Enter date</b> <b>Select frequency</b>
	<b>Editing Added Holidays</b> <b>Select holiday</b> <b>Edit</b> <b>Name:</b> <b>Enter name</b> <b>Date:</b> <b>Enter date</b> <b>Select frequency</b>
Hiding/showing holidays	<b>Calendar Settings</b> <b>Set Holiday</b> <b>Private or Public</b> <b>holiday</b> (/)
■ Saving/Editing Schedules	
Setting Category/Location	<b>Start Here</b> <b>Select date</b> <b>Select entry</b>
	<b>Category</b> <b>Category:</b> <b>Select Category</b>
	<b>Location</b> <b>Location:</b> <b>Enter location</b>
Saving repetitive schedules	<b>Select date</b> <b>Select entry</b> <b>Repeat:</b> <b>Select frequency</b> • Repeat time is not available for <b>Every Year</b> .

Editing entries	→ Select date →  → Select entry →  →  → Select item →  → Edit in the same manner as saving schedules →
Changing Alarm tone/video & duration	Start Here  → Select date →  → Select entry →  →  → Alarm: →  → See below <b>Alarm Tone/Video</b> Assign Tone/Video: →  → Select folder →  → Select tone/file →  →  → • Select start point if required. <b>Duration</b> Duration: →  → Select time →  →  →
Changing Alarm volume	→  → Alarm Settings →  → Alarm Volume: →  → Adjust level →
Selecting Vibration option	→  → Alarm Settings →  → Vibration: →  → Select option →
Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode	→  → Alarm Settings →  → For Manner Mode: →  → Ring →  → Yes →

## Managing Schedules

Searching entries by part of subject	→  → 6 → Enter text →
Searching entries by Category	→  → 9 → Select Category →
Checking memory status	→ Select date →  → Memory Status →
Deleting all entries	→  → Delete →  → All Appointments →  → Enter Handset Code →  → Yes →
Deleting entries within one week (Week View)	→ Select date →  → Delete →  → All This Week →  → Yes →
Deleting entries up to the end of previous week (Week View)	→ Select date →  → Delete →  → Up to Last Week →  → Yes →
Deleting entries within one month (1Month View)	→ Select date →  → Delete →  → All This Month →  → Yes →
Deleting entries up to the end of previous month (1Month View)	→ Select date →  → Delete →  → Up to Last Month →  → Yes →
Deleting entries in two months (2Month View)	→  → Delete →  → All This 2Months →  → Yes →

Tasks	
■ Task List	
Hiding tasks	[●] → <b>Tools</b> → [●] → <b>Tasks</b> → [●] → Select task → [☰] → <b>Edit</b> → [●] → <b>Secret:</b> → [●] → <b>On</b> → [●]
■ Saving/Editing Tasks	
Editing tasks	[●] → <b>Tools</b> → [●] → <b>Tasks</b> → [●] → Select task → [☰] → <b>Edit</b> → [●] → Select item → [●] → Edit in the same manner as saving tasks → [✓]
Setting priority	[●] → <b>Tools</b> → [●] → <b>Tasks</b> → [●] → Select task → [☰] → <b>Edit</b> → [●] → <b>Priority:</b> → [●] → Select priority → [●] → [✓]
Changing Alarm tone/video & duration	<div>             [Start Here] [●] → <b>Tools</b> → [●] → <b>Tasks</b> → [●] →              Select task → [☰] → <b>Edit</b> → [●] → <b>Alarm:</b> → [●]              → See below           </div> <div> <b>Alarm Tone/Video</b>  <b>Assign Tone/Video:</b> → [●] → Select folder →              [●] → Select tone/file → [●] → [✓] [✓]              • Select start point if required.           </div> <div> <b>Duration</b>  <b>Duration:</b> → [●] → Select time → [●] → [✓] → [✓]           </div>

Changing Alarm volume	[●] → <b>Tools</b> → [●] → <b>Tasks</b> → [●] → [☰] → <b>Alarm Settings</b> → [●] → <b>Alarm Volume:</b> → [●] → Adjust level → [●]
Selecting Vibration option	[●] → <b>Tools</b> → [●] → <b>Tasks</b> → [●] → [☰] → <b>Alarm Settings</b> → [●] → <b>Vibration:</b> → [●] → Select option → [●]
Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode	[●] → <b>Tools</b> → [●] → <b>Tasks</b> → [●] → [☰] → <b>Alarm Settings</b> → [●] → <b>For Manner Mode:</b> → [●] → <b>Ring</b> → [●] → <b>Yes</b> → [●]
■ Managing Tasks	
Searching tasks	<div>             [Start Here] [●] → <b>Tools</b> → [●] → <b>Tasks</b> → [●] → [☰]              → <b>Find</b> → [●] → See below           </div> <div> <b>By Part of Subject</b>  <b>By Subject</b> → [●] → Enter text → [●]           </div> <div> <b>By Due Date</b>  <b>By Due Date</b> → [●] → Enter date → [●]           </div>
Sorting tasks by priority	[●] → <b>Tools</b> → [●] → <b>Tasks</b> → [●] → [☰] → <b>Sort</b> → [●] → <b>Priority</b> → [●]
Checking memory status	[●] → <b>Tools</b> → [●] → <b>Tasks</b> → [●] → [☰] → <b>Memory Status</b> → [●]
Deleting all tasks	[●] → <b>Tools</b> → [●] → <b>Tasks</b> → [●] → [☰] → <b>Delete</b> → [●] → <b>All Tasks</b> → [●] → Enter Handset Code → [●] → <b>Yes</b> → [●]

## Alarms

Editing entries	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Tools → Alarms → Select entry → Select item → Edit in the same manner as saving entries</li> </ul>
Saving entry name	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Tools → Alarms → Select entry → Subject: → Enter name</li> </ul>
Changing Alarm tone/video	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Tools → Alarms → Select entry → Assign Tone/Video: → Select folder → Select tone/file</li> <li>• Select start point if required.</li> </ul>
Setting handset to vibrate at Alarm Time	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Tools → Alarms → Select entry → Vibration: → On or Link to Sound</li> <li>• Select <b>Link to Sound</b> to allow compatible SMAF files to control vibration.</li> </ul>
Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Tools → Alarms → Settings → For Manner Mode → Ring → Yes</li> </ul>

## Calculator

Copying calculation results	While result appears, Copy
Changing exchange rate for currency conversion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Tools → Calculator → Money Converter → Exchange Rate → Domestic or Foreign → Enter rate</li> </ul>
Converting currencies	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Tools → Calculator → Enter amount of money → Money Converter → To Domestic or To Foreign</li> <li>• Set Exchange Rate first.</li> </ul>

Notepad	
Editing Notepad	<p>[Start Here] → <b>Tools</b> → <b>Notepad</b> → <b>Select entry</b> → <b>See below</b></p> <p><b>Editing Text</b>  <b>Edit Text</b> → <b>Edit</b></p> <p><b>Changing Category</b>  <b>Change Category</b> → <b>Select Category</b></p>
	<p><b>Searching text within all entries</b>  <b>Tools</b> → <b>Notepad</b> → <b>Select entry</b> → <b>Search</b> → <b>Enter text</b></p>
Inserting Notepad text into message text	<p><b>Tools</b> → <b>Notepad</b> → <b>Select entry</b> → <b>Send</b> → <b>As Message Text</b> → <b>S! Mail or SMS</b> → <b>Complete message</b></p> <p>• S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.</p>
Sending entries via S! Mail	<p><b>Tools</b> → <b>Notepad</b> → <b>Select entry</b> → <b>Send</b> → <b>Via Message</b> → <b>Complete message</b></p>
Creating text files	<p><b>Tools</b> → <b>Notepad</b> → <b>Select entry</b> → <b>Setting/Manage</b> → <b>Create Text File</b> → <b>Enter name</b> → <b>Save here</b></p>
Importing text files	<p><b>Tools</b> → <b>Notepad</b> → <b>Select entry</b> → <b>Setting/Manage</b> → <b>Import Text File</b> → <b>Select file</b></p>
Checking memory status	<p><b>Tools</b> → <b>Notepad</b> → <b>Select entry</b> → <b>Setting/Manage</b> → <b>Memory Status</b></p>

Opening properties	<p><b>Tools</b> → <b>Notepad</b> → <b>Select entry</b> → <b>Details</b></p>
Voice Recorder	
Saving longer recordings	<p><b>Tools</b> → <b>Voice Recorder</b> → <b>Record Time</b> → <b>Extended Voice</b> → <b>Recording starts</b> → <b>Recording ends</b></p> <p>• Insert Memory Card to record in <b>Extended Voice</b> mode. (Recording is saved automatically.)</p>
Sending Voice files via S! Mail	<p><b>Tools</b> → <b>Voice Recorder</b> → <b>Recording starts</b> → <b>Recording ends</b> → <b>Save and Send</b> → <b>Complete message</b></p> <p>• Available in <b>For Message</b> mode.</p>
Switching storage media	<p><b>Tools</b> → <b>Voice Recorder</b> → <b>Save Recording to</b> → <b>Select option</b></p> <p>• Available in <b>For Message</b> mode.          • Set to <b>Ask Each Time</b> to select media after every recording.</p>

## Scan Barcode

Scanning during text entry	<p><b>[Start Here]</b> In a text entry window, <b>[F5]</b> ➔ <b>Scan</b> ➔ <b>[F5]</b> ➔ <b>Frame barcode in center of Display</b> ➔ <b>[F5]</b> ➔ <b>See below</b></p> <p><b>Pasting All Scan Results</b></p> <p><b>[F5]</b></p>
	<p><b>Pasting a Part of Scan Results</b></p> <p><b>[F5]</b> ➔ <b>Select first character</b> ➔ <b>[F5]</b> ➔ <b>Highlight text range</b> ➔ <b>[F5]</b></p>
	<p><b>[F5]</b> ➔ <b>Tools</b> ➔ <b>[F5]</b> ➔ <b>Barcode/Scan</b> ➔ <b>[F5]</b> ➔ <b>Scan Barcode</b> ➔ <b>[F5]</b> ➔ <b>[F5]</b> ➔ <b>Continuous Scan</b> ➔ <b>[F5]</b> ➔ <b>On</b> ➔ <b>[F5]</b> ➔ <b>Frame barcode in center of Display</b> ➔ <b>[F5]</b></p> <p>• Choose <b>Yes</b> to continue scanning or <b>No</b> and press <b>[F5]</b> to view scan results.</p>
Reading saved barcode images	<p><b>[F5]</b> ➔ <b>Tools</b> ➔ <b>[F5]</b> ➔ <b>Barcode/Scan</b> ➔ <b>[F5]</b> ➔ <b>Open Barcode</b> ➔ <b>[F5]</b> ➔ <b>Select file</b> ➔ <b>[F5]</b></p>
Saving scan results	<p><b>[F5]</b> ➔ <b>Tools</b> ➔ <b>[F5]</b> ➔ <b>Barcode/Scan</b> ➔ <b>[F5]</b> ➔ <b>Scan Barcode</b> ➔ <b>[F5]</b> ➔ <b>Frame barcode in center of Display</b> ➔ <b>[F5]</b> ➔ <b>[F5]</b> ➔ <b>Save</b> ➔ <b>[F5]</b></p>
Saving to Notepad	<p><b>[F5]</b> ➔ <b>Tools</b> ➔ <b>[F5]</b> ➔ <b>Barcode/Scan</b> ➔ <b>[F5]</b> ➔ <b>Scan Barcode</b> ➔ <b>[F5]</b> ➔ <b>Frame barcode in center of Display</b> ➔ <b>[F5]</b> ➔ <b>[F5]</b> ➔ <b>Notepad</b> ➔ <b>[F5]</b></p>

## Saving linked info to Phone Book

**[F5]** ➔ **Tools** ➔ **[F5]** ➔ **Barcode/Scan** ➔ **[F5]** ➔ **Scan Barcode** ➔ **[F5]** ➔ **Frame barcode in center of Display** ➔ **[F5]** ➔ **Select number or mail address** ➔ **[F5]** ➔ **Save to Ph.Book** ➔ **[F5]** ➔ **As New Entry** ➔ **[F5]** ➔ **Complete other fields** ➔ **[F5]**

- To add to an existing entry, select **As New Detail**.
- When **MEMORY:** appears in scan results, press **[F5]** to enter the items underlined with a dotted line automatically in Phone Book entry window.

## Opening saved scan results

**[F5]** ➔ **Tools** ➔ **[F5]** ➔ **Barcode/Scan** ➔ **[F5]** ➔ **Scanned Results** ➔ **[F5]** ➔ **Select file** ➔ **[F5]**

- Select a file and press **[F5]** to rename files, open properties or delete files.
- Some files may not open.

## Using linked info

**[Start Here]** **[F5]** ➔ **Tools** ➔ **[F5]** ➔ **Barcode/Scan** ➔ **[F5]** ➔ **Scan Barcode** ➔ **[F5]** ➔ **Frame barcode in center of Display** ➔ **[F5]** ➔ **See below**

## Dialing Numbers

Select phone number ➔ **[F5]** ➔ **[F5]**

## Sending Messages

Select mail address ➔ **[F5]** ➔ **[F5]** ➔ **Complete message** ➔ **[F5]**

- When **MAILTO:** appears in scan results, press **[F5]** to enter the items underlined with a dotted line automatically in Mail Composition window.

## Accessing Internet Sites

Select URL ➔ **[F5]**

Using images as Wallpaper	<p>  ➤ <b>Tools</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Barcode/Scan</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Frame barcode in center of Display</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Select image</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Set as Wallpaper</b> ➤  </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For images smaller or larger than Display, Wallpaper Display options appear; follow onscreen prompts.</li> </ul>
Saving images & melodies	<p>  ➤ <b>Tools</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Barcode/Scan</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Frame barcode in center of Display</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Select file</b> ➤  ➤ <b>To Data Folder</b> ➤  </p>
Opening or playing files	<p>  ➤ <b>Tools</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Barcode/Scan</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Frame barcode in center of Display</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Select file</b> ➤  </p>
Using images for System Graphics	<p>  ➤ <b>Tools</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Barcode/Scan</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Frame barcode in center of Display</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Select image</b> ➤  ➤ <b>As System</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Select item</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Specify image area</b> ➤  </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Some images may be usable without specifying image area.</li> </ul>

Pasting to message text	<p>  ➤ <b>Tools</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Barcode/Scan</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Scan Barcode</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Frame barcode in center of Display</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Send Message</b> ➤  ➤ <b>See below</b> </p> <p><b>All Text</b></p> <p>  ➤ <b>S! Mail or SMS</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Complete message</b> ➤  </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.</li> </ul> <p><b>Selected Text</b></p> <p>  ➤ <b>Select first character</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Highlight text range</b> ➤  ➤ <b>S! Mail or SMS</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Complete message</b> ➤  </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.</li> </ul>
Copying text	<p>  ➤ <b>Tools</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Barcode/Scan</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Scan Barcode</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Frame barcode in center of Display</b> ➤  ➤ <b>See below</b> </p> <p><b>Text</b></p> <p>  ➤ <b>Copy</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Select first character</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Highlight text range</b> ➤  </p> <p><b>Number, Address or URL</b></p> <p>  ➤ <b>Select number, mail address or URL</b> ➤  ➤ <b>Copy Telephone, Copy Address or Copy URL</b> ➤  </p>

## Voice Recorder



### Cannot record properly

- If incompatible microphone is connected, recording may fail.



### Noise/skipping occurs

- Avoid shocks to handset while recording; may cause noise or skipping.



### Recording takes time to start

- Recording window may take longer to open as more Voice files are saved on Memory Card.

## Scanning Barcode



### Cannot read barcodes properly

- Scan may fail if barcode is dirty or unclear.
- Scan may fail if barcode is scanned under inadequate light.
- Scan may fail if multiple barcodes are captured at one time.



### Cannot read split QR Codes in Data Folder automatically

- When scan fails, follow onscreen instructions and select next barcode image manually.

<b>S! Information Channel .....</b>	<b>9-2</b>
S! Information Channel & Weather Indicator (Japanese) .....	9-2
<b>S! Quick News .....</b>	<b>9-3</b>
Receiving Content Updates (Japanese) .....	9-3

<b>Content Downloads .....</b>	<b>9-4</b>
Downloading Content (Japanese) ....	9-4
<b>e-Books .....</b>	<b>9-5</b>
Reading e-Books (Japanese) .....	9-5
<b>Additional Functions .....</b>	<b>9-6</b>
<b>Troubleshooting.....</b>	<b>9-9</b>

# 9

## Entertainment



## S! Information Channel & Weather Indicator (Japanese)

Subscribe to Japanese mobile periodicals that download to handset automatically; use Weather Indicator as needed. Packet transmission fees apply.

### Service Registration & Content Subscription

- 1 **Entertainment** **S! Information Channel/Weather**



S! Information Channel Menu

- 2 **Registration/Cancel**
- Handset connects to the Internet. Follow onscreen instructions.

### New Received Information

Information window opens for new S! Information Channel info delivery.

- 1 **While Information window appears, S! Info. Channel**
- S! Information Channel page opens. Follow onscreen instructions.
  - S! Information Channel page handling is similar to that of Yahoo! Keitai.

- 2 **Standby returns**

#### Opening Unread Latest Issue

[S! Information Channel Menu]  
**What's New**

#### Opening Back Issues

[S! Information Channel Menu]  
**Back Issue** **Select date**

### Using Weather Indicator

After S! Information Channel registration, local area weather indicator appears in Standby.

#### Manual Update

[S! Information Channel Menu]  
**Weather Indicator** **Manual Update** **Yes**

### Advanced

- Suppressing Information window for new received info ● Changing Display Size ● Changing scroll unit ● Copying text ● Hiding Weather Indicator in Standby ● Canceling Weather Indicator automatic updates ● Suppressing Information window for weather updates (And more on P.9-6)



## Receiving Content Updates (Japanese)

View content updates or breaking news.  
Packet transmission fees apply.

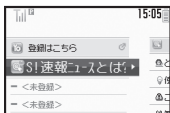
### Registering S! Quick News Items

- 1 ➔ **Entertainment** ➔ ➔ **S! Quick News** ➔



S! Quick News Menu

- 2 **S! Quick News List** ➔



S! Quick News List

- 3 **登録はこちら** ➔ ➔ **Yes** ➔

- Handset connects to the Internet.

- 4 **Select item** ➔

- Follow onscreen instructions.

### Opening Information

- 1 **In S! Quick News List, select item** ➔

- Title list appears.

- 2 **Select title** ➔

- Information appears.
- Press to return to title list, or to open next title.

### Updating Items Manually

[S! Quick News List] **Select item** ➔

➔ **更新** ➔ ➔ **一件 or 全件** ➔

### Indicators

	Unread Special news		Unread General news
	Read Special news		Read General news
	Unread News Flash		Auto update disabled
	Read News Flash		

### Standby Window

View S! Quick News in Standby.



- If Standby Window is closed, press to open it.
- In Standby, press then to open S! Quick News List.

### Advanced

- Updating S! Quick News List automatically ● Checking update schedule ● Deleting S! Quick News items ● Resetting S! Quick News List ● Adding news items ● Changing background image ● Accessing source sites ● Disabling image download (And more on P.9-7)



## Downloading Content (Japanese)

Download media content via Yahoo! Keitai.

### Via S! Contents Store

1 ☐ ➔ **Entertainment** ➔ ☐



Entertainment Menu

2 **S! Contents Store** ➔ ☐

- Handset connects to the Internet.  
Follow onscreen instructions.

### Via Free Content Providers

Download free Graphic Mail templates, e-Books, games, etc.

Content downloads are free, however, they require Internet connection incurring packet transmission fees.

1 In Entertainment menu, **Free Contents** ➔ ☐



2 **Select provider** ➔ ☐

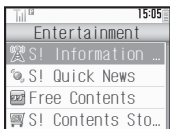
- Handset connects to the Internet.  
Follow onscreen instructions.



# Reading e-Books (Japanese)

## Downloading e-Books

### 1 **Entertainment**



Entertainment Menu



### 2 **S! Contents Store**

- Follow onscreen instructions.
- Downloaded e-Books are saved to Data Folder (Books).

#### Note

- Alternatively, go to SH-web Mobile Internet site ([シャープ・メカサイト/SH-web](#)) in Bookmarks; see **P.5-7**) for e-Books.

#### Downloading Free E-Books

In  **Free Contents** 

**Tada-Hon or Tada-Komi** 

- Follow onscreen instructions.

## e-Book Viewer

Read XPDF books and dictionary files. Some files may not be supported.

### 1 In Entertainment menu, **e-Book Viewer**

- e-Book Viewer starts. Refer to the e-Book Viewer help menu for operational instructions.

## BookSurfing®

Download Contents Keys and read CCF files. Some files may not be supported.

### 1 In Entertainment menu, **BookSurfing**

- BookSurfing® S! Application starts. Refer to the BookSurfing® help menu for operational instructions.

#### Moving CCF Files via Memory Card

- When purchasing a new handset, move CCF files and retrieve Contents Keys to open the files. Some files may need to be re-downloaded.

## Advanced

-  ● Copying text ● Opening non-840SH e-Books (Library) ● Using Library (**P.9-8**)



## S! Information Channel

### Receiving Information

Suppressing Information window for new received info	→ <i>Entertainment</i> →  → <i>S! Information Channel/Weather</i> →  → <i>Notification</i> →  → <i>Off</i>
Requesting re-delivery	→ <i>Entertainment</i> →  → <i>S! Information Channel/Weather</i> →  → <i>Get Latest Contents</i> →  → <i>Yes</i>

### Information Pages

Changing Display Size	On a page,  → <i>Settings</i> →  → <i>Display Size</i> →  → <i>Select size</i>
Changing scroll unit	On a page,  → <i>Settings</i> →  → <i>Scroll Unit</i> →  → <i>Select unit</i>
Copying text	On a page,  → <i>Copy Text</i> →  → <i>Select first character</i> →  → <i>Highlight text range</i>
Saving files to Data Folder	On a page,  → <i>Save Items</i> →  → <i>Select file</i> →  → <i>Save</i> →  → <i>Enter name</i> →  → <i>Save here</i> • Some files are saved automatically.
Opening page properties	On a page,  → <i>Details</i>

## Weather Indicators

Checking weather forecast	→ <i>Entertainment</i> →  → <i>S! Information Channel/Weather</i> →  → <i>Weather Indicator</i> →  → <i>Weather</i>
Changing weather forecast page font size	On a page,  → <i>Settings</i> →  → <i>Font Size</i> →  → <i>Select size</i>
Hiding Weather Indicator in Standby	→ <i>Entertainment</i> →  → <i>S! Information Channel/Weather</i> →  → <i>Weather Indicator</i> →  → <i>Settings</i> →  → <i>Standby Setting</i> →  → <i>Off</i>
Canceling Weather Indicator automatic updates	→ <i>Entertainment</i> →  → <i>S! Information Channel/Weather</i> →  → <i>Weather Indicator</i> →  → <i>Settings</i> →  → <i>Icon Update</i> →  → <i>Off</i>
Suppressing Information window for weather updates	→ <i>Entertainment</i> →  → <i>S! Information Channel/Weather</i> →  → <i>Weather Indicator</i> →  → <i>Settings</i> →  → <i>Weather Notif.</i> →  → <i>Off</i>



## S! Quick News

## Opening/Updating Items

Updating S! Quick News List automatically	<p> <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Entertainment</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>S! Quick News</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Settings</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Automatic Update</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Select item</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Select interval</i> or choose <i>On</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If a confirmation appears, press <input type="checkbox"/>.</li> <li>When Special is set to <i>On</i>, items are updated every four hours.</li> <li>When General is set to <i>On</i>, items are updated once a day.</li> <li>To cancel automatic update, choose <i>Off</i> and press <input type="checkbox"/>.</li> <li>Updating items may incur high packet transmission fees.</li> </ul>
Checking update schedule	<p> <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Entertainment</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>S! Quick News</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Settings</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Check Schedule</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> </p>
Deleting S! Quick News items	<p> <input type="checkbox"/> (Start Here) → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Entertainment</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>S! Quick News</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>S! Quick News List</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Select item</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → See below         </p> <p> <b>One Entry</b>  <input type="checkbox"/> 一件 → <input type="checkbox"/> → Yes → <input type="checkbox"/> </p> <p> <b>All Entries</b>  <input type="checkbox"/> 全件 → <input type="checkbox"/> → Enter Handset Code → <input type="checkbox"/> → Yes → <input type="checkbox"/> </p>
Resetting S! Quick News List	<p> <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Entertainment</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>S! Quick News</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Settings</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Delete S! Quick News Lists</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → Enter Handset Code → <input type="checkbox"/> → Yes → <input type="checkbox"/> </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Not available during automatic updates.</li> </ul>

## Standby Window

Adding news items	<p> <input type="checkbox"/> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Add News</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>S! Quick News List</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>登録はこちら</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → Yes → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Select genre</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Select item</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Follow onscreen instructions.</li> </ul>
Changing news scroll speed	<p> <input type="checkbox"/> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>News Display</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>News Speed</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Select speed</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> </p>
Showing unread news only	<p> <input type="checkbox"/> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>News Display</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Target News</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Unread Only</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> </p>
Selecting display option	<p> <input type="checkbox"/> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Standby Window</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Display Window</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Select option</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> </p>

## Other

Changing background image	<p> <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Entertainment</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>S! Quick News</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Settings</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Change Skin</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Select pattern</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> </p>
Accessing source sites	<p> <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Entertainment</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>S! Quick News</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>S! Quick News List</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Select item</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Select title</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Select linked title</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → Yes → <input type="checkbox"/> </p>
Disabling image download	<p> <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Entertainment</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>S! Quick News</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Settings</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Show Image</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> → <i>Off</i> → <input type="checkbox"/> </p>



## e-Books

Copying text	In open page,  → 文字列を北 →  → Select first character →  → Highlight text range →
Opening non-840SH e-Books (Library)	→ Entertainment →  → e-Book Viewer → → Select file → • Some files may not open.
Using Library	→  → Entertainment →  → e-Book Viewer →  → See below
	<b>Adding Folders</b> → New Folder →  → Enter name →
	<b>Switching Folders</b> → Switch Folders →  → Select folder →
	<b>Renaming Folders/Files</b> Select folder/file →  → Change Name → → Enter name →
	<b>Moving Files</b> Select file →  → Move →  → Select folder →  → Move here →
	<b>Deleting Folders/Files</b> Select folder/file →  → Delete →  → Yes →
	<b>Opening File Properties</b> Select file →  → Details →



## S! Quick News



### Cannot receive content updates

- Update may fail out-of-range or in poor signal conditions.
- Automatic Update does not affect S! Quick News List News Flash update items overnight.
- USIM Card replacement cancels Automatic Update.



<b>Handset Security</b> .....	<b>10-2</b>
Operations Security.....	10-2
Information Security.....	10-3

<b>Function Control</b> .....	<b>10-4</b>
Using Function Control.....	10-4
<b>Additional Functions</b> .....	<b>10-5</b>

# 10

## Handset Security



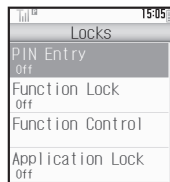
## Operations Security

### Function Lock

Restrict access to handset functions.

<b>Auto</b>	Lock when Display turns off or handset is closed
<b>Once</b>	Lock immediately; setting is canceled once handset is unlocked
<b>At Power On</b>	Lock when handset is turned on; Handset Code entry window opens

- 1 ➔ **Settings** ➔ ➔ ➔ **Phone/** ➔ **Locks** ➔



Locks Menu

- 2 **Function Lock** ➔
- 3 **Select option** ➔ ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔

#### Unlocking Temporarily

While handset is locked, enter  
Handset Code ➔

#### Available Operations while Function Lock is Active

- Power handset on/off, answer calls, place callers on hold, end calls, etc.

### PIN Entry

Activate PIN Entry to require PIN entry each time handset is powered on.

- 1 **In Locks menu, PIN Entry** ➔ ➔ **Switch On/Off** ➔
- 2 **On** ➔ ➔ **Enter PIN** ➔

### Secure Remote Lock

Lock a lost handset remotely via PC or another handset. Secure Remote Lock disables all operations except powering handset on.

For more about Secure Remote Lock, see SoftBank Mobile Website (P.14-21) or contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P.14-36).

### Advanced

- Changing PIN ● Setting Secure Remote Lock activation message (P.10-5)



# Information Security

## Application Lock

Restrict access to these functions:

Phone Book

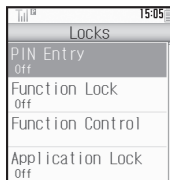
Mail

Calendar/Tasks

Notepad

Yahoo! Keitai

- 1 ➔ **Settings** ➔ ➔ ➔ **Phone/** ➔ **Locks** ➔



Locks Menu

- 2 **Application Lock** ➔

- 3 **Select item** ➔ (✓)

For Phone Book, select **No Refer** (to hide entry names in message lists, Call Log, etc.) or **Refer** and press .

- 4 ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔

## Temporary Access to Functions

- When accessing functions, enter Handset Code and press .

## History Lock

Restrict access to Call Log and sent/received mail records.

- 1 **In Locks menu, History Lock** ➔

- 2 **Select item** ➔ (✓)

- 3 ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔

## Temporary Access to Records

- When accessing records, enter Handset Code and press .

## Show Secret Data

Activate Show Secret Data to access Secret entries.

- 1 **In Locks menu, Show Secret Data** ➔

- 2 **On** ➔ ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔

## When Show Secret Data is Active

- Predictive is not available for text entry.



## Using Function Control

Restrict access to the following functions remotely. (Available for administrators.)

Camera	S! Mail
Infrared	Attach File
Memory Card	Yahoo! Keitai
USB	PC Site Browser
Messaging	S! Appli
Voice Call (placing)	Streaming
Video Call (placing)	Flash®
USIM (writing)	

- A message appears while Function Control is in progress.
- May be unavailable depending on subscription. For details, contact the nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P.14-36).

### ■ When Accessing Restricted Functions

A message (example shown below) appears; the function is inaccessible.

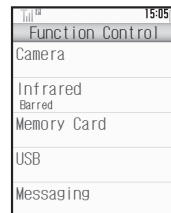


Message may not appear for some functions.

### Checking Restriction Status

1 ➔ **Settings** ➔ ➔ ➔ **Phone/** ➔ **Locks** ➔

2 **Function Control** ➔





- Restriction status appears for each function.




## PIN Entry

## Changing PIN

- ➔ **Settings** ➔ ● ➔  **Phone/**  ➔ **Locks**
- ➔ ● ➔ **PIN Entry** ➔ ● ➔ **Change PIN** ➔ ●
- ➔ Enter current PIN ➔ ● ➔ Enter new PIN
- ➔ ● ➔ Re-enter new PIN ➔ ●
- Activate PIN Entry first.

## Secure Remote Lock

## Setting Secure Remote Lock activation message

- Start Here** ● ➔ **Settings** ➔ ● ➔  **Phone/** 
- ➔ **Locks** ➔ ● ➔ **Set Lock Message** ➔ ● ➔
- See below
- Saving Message**
- Message** ➔ ● ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ ● ➔
- Enter message ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ●
- Checking Message**
- Check Message** ➔ ●
- Suppressing Message**
- Display Setting** ➔ ● ➔ **Don't Show** ➔ ● ➔
- Enter Handset Code ➔ ●



<b>Data Folder .....</b>	<b>11-2</b>
Opening Files .....	11-3
Managing Files & Folders .....	11-4

<b>Memory Card .....</b>	<b>11-5</b>
Using Memory Card .....	11-5
<b>Additional Functions .....</b>	<b>11-7</b>
<b>Troubleshooting .....</b>	<b>11-9</b>

# 11

## Data Folder & Memory Card



## Data Folder




Handset files are organized in folders by file format.

### ■ Preset Folders

	Contents
<b>Pictures*</b>	Still images
<b>DCIM</b>	Large still images on Memory Card (images captured with save location set to <b>DCIM</b> )
<b>Ring Songs-Tones*</b>	Downloaded melodies and other sound files
<b>S! Appli*</b>	S! Applications
<b>Music*</b>	Downloaded Chaku-Uta Full® files
<b>Videos*</b>	Video images
<b>Books*</b>	Downloaded e-Books, etc.
<b>Flash®</b>	Downloaded Flash® (animation) files
<b>Other Documents</b>	Other files (Dictionary files, etc.)

\*Contains corresponding Yahoo! Keitai menu shortcut.

### Checking Memory Status

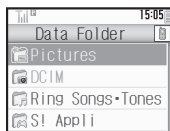
 ➔ **Memory Status** ➔  ➔ **Phone Memory or Memory Card** ➔ 

- The category **Others**: includes Data Folder management files, Saved Pages, etc.
- Delete messages/files when memory is low. Handset performance may be affected when memory is full.



# Opening Files

1



- Unselectable files/folders appear in gray.
- To show/hide sub folders, select a folder and press .

2 Select folder ➡

To open a sub folder, select it and press .



File List

3 Select file ➡



- The content plays or appears.
- To return to file list, press .

## Handling Open Images

- Press to enlarge, or press or to open next or previous image. Press to rotate 90 degrees clockwise.

## Attaching to Mail

After 2, select file ➡ ➡ **Send** ➡ ➡ **As Message** ➡

- If a confirmation appears, follow onscreen instructions.

## Copy Protected Files ( or )

- Some functions may be unavailable.

## Slide Show

Available for Pictures or DCIM folder.

1 In file list, select file ➡

2 Slide Show ➡

- Slide Show starts.

3 ➡ Slide Show stops

## Changing Interval

After 2, ➡ **Speed** ➡ ➡ **Select speed** ➡

- When Speed is set to **Manual**, press or to advance or reverse frames.

## Advanced

- Switching file list view
- Changing image quality
- Showing images in original size
- Changing Slide Show settings
- Using files as Wallpaper
- Using files as ringtones
- Using files as ringvideos (And more on P.11-7)

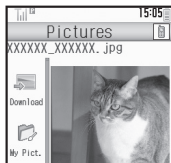


# Managing Files & Folders





## Adding Folders

May be unavailable for some folders.

- 1  ➔ **Select folder** ➔ 









File List





- 2  If **Download** is selected or folder is empty, skip ahead to 4.
- 3 **Manage Items** ➔ 
- 4 **Create Folder** ➔  ➔ **Enter name** ➔ 

## Moving/Copying Files

Some files may not be moved/copied.




- 1 In file list, select file ➔ 
- 2 **Move or Copy** ➔  ➔ **Phone or Memory Card** ➔ 
  - For still images, select **Pictures** or **Mail Art** and press .
- 3 Select folder ➔ 
- 4 **Move here or Copy here** ➔ 

## Selecting Multiple Files




- 1 In file list, 
- 2 Select file ➔ 
  - Repeat 2 as needed. (To uncheck, select a file with  and press .)

## Hiding Folders




Restrict access to created folders.  
Only handset folders can be hidden.

- 1 In file list, select folder ➔ 
- 2 **Set Secret** ➔  ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔ 

## Accessing Secret Folders (Unlock Temporarily)

[File List]  ➔ **Unlock Temporarily** ➔  ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔ 

## Canceling Secret

**Unlock Secret folders temporarily and select Secret folder** ➔  ➔ **Unset Secret** ➔  ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔ 

## Advanced

 ● Renaming folders ● Opening file properties ● Renaming files ● Sorting files ● Deleting files & created folders ● Handling SVG files (P.11-8)



## Using Memory Card

Use microSD Memory Card (hereafter "Memory Card") to save and organize files for use on 840SH.

Use recommended Memory Cards only. For details, see **P.14-21** "microSD Memory Card Compatibility."

### Important Memory Card Usage Notes

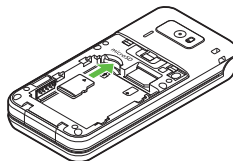
- Do not force Memory Card into or out of handset.
- Keep Memory Cards out of infant's reach; may cause suffocation if swallowed.
- Do not touch terminals or expose them to metal objects.
- SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of information. Keep a copy of Phone Book entries, etc. in a separate place.
- Never power handset off or remove battery while files are being accessed.
- Be careful not to erase or overwrite files accidentally.

### Inserting & Removing

First, power handset off.

#### 1 Remove battery (P.14-4)

#### 2 Insert card



- With terminal side down, insert card until it clicks.
- Do not insert other objects into Memory Card Slot.

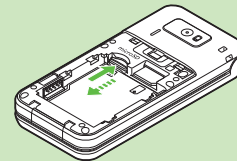
#### 3 Insert battery, then close cover

### If Appears after Power On

- Memory Card may not be inserted properly; reinsert the card.

### Removing Memory Card

- Gently push in card and release it; card pops out. Pull card straight out gently.



## Format Card

When using a new Memory Card for the first time, format it on the handset before trying to save files, etc. Format Card deletes all Memory Card files, even those created on other devices.

1 **Connectivity** **Memory Card**

2 **Format Card** **Yes**

- Offline Mode is set. Handset transmissions are suspended until format is complete.

3 **Enter Handset Code**

4 **Yes**

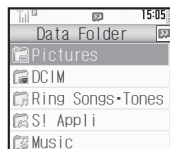
- To cancel, choose **No** and press .

## Precaution

- Never remove Memory Card or battery while formatting; may cause damage.

## Opening Memory Card Files

1 **Change to MemoryCard**



- Memory Card Data Folder opens.

2 **Select folder**

To open a sub folder, select it and press .

3 **Select file**



File/Folder View Settings	
Switching file list view	→ Select folder →  →  → <i>Manage Items</i> → <i>Change List View</i> →  → Select option →
Changing image quality	→ Select folder →  → Select file →  →  → <i>Image Quality (Picture Quality for Flash® files)</i> →  → Select quality →
Showing images in original size	→ Select folder →  → Select file →  →  → <i>Switch Display</i> →  → <i>Original Size</i> →
Changing Slide Show settings	→  → Select folder →  → Select file →  → <i>Slide Show</i> →  →  → See below
	<b>Playing Once</b> <i>Repeat</i> →  → <i>Off</i> →
	<b>Playing Music</b> <i>BGM Settings</i> →  → <i>Switch On/Off</i> →  → <i>On</i> →
	<b>Changing Music</b> <i>BGM Settings</i> →  → <i>Play Ring Tones</i> →  → Select folder →  → Select file →
Hiding Softkeys in image view	→ Select folder →  → Select file →  →  → <i>SW Guide Display</i> →  → <i>Off</i> →

Using Files/Folders	
Using files as Wallpaper	→ Select folder →  → Select file →  → <i>Set as Wallpaper</i> →  → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For images smaller or larger than Display, Wallpaper Display options appear; follow onscreen prompts.</li> </ul>
Using files as ringtones	→ Select folder →  → Select file →  → <i>Set as Ringtone</i> →  → Select item → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If prompted, enter ring time and press .</li> <li>If a confirmation appears, follow onscreen instructions.</li> </ul>
Using files as ringvideos	→ <i>Videos</i> →  → Select file →  → <i>Set as Ring Video</i> →  → Select item → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If prompted, enter ring time and press .</li> </ul>
Saving Phone Book entries	→ Select folder →  → Select file →  → <i>Save to Phone Book</i> →  → <i>As New Entry</i> →  → <i>Complete other fields</i> → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To add to an existing entry, select <i>As New Detail</i>.</li> </ul>
Activating mobile camera, etc. in corresponding folders	→ Select folder →  →  → <i>Take Picture, Record Video or Record Voice</i> →



## Managing Files/Folders

Renaming folders	➔ <b>Select folder</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Select folder</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Manage Items</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Rename</b> ➔  ➔ Enter name ➔ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Assign different names to folders within a layer.</li> </ul>
Opening file properties	➔ <b>Select folder</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Select file</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Details</b> ➔
Renaming files	➔ <b>Select folder</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Select file</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Manage Items</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Rename</b> ➔  ➔ Enter name ➔
Sorting files	➔ <b>Select folder</b> ➔  ➔  ➔ <b>Manage Items</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Sort</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Select method</b> ➔ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To reverse the order, sort by the same method again.</li> </ul>
Deleting files & created folders	➔ <b>Select folder</b> ➔  ➔ <b>See below</b> <p><b>Single Files</b></p> <b>Select file</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Delete</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Yes</b> ➔ <p><b>Folder &amp; Files Within</b></p> <b>Select folder</b> ➔  ➔ <b>Delete</b> ➔  ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔  ➔ <b>Yes</b> ➔

## Handling SVG files

## Line Scroll



## Page Scroll

(Up), (Down), (Right), (Left)

## Zoom

(Zoom out), (Zoom in)

## Rotate

(Counterclockwise), (Clockwise)

## Key Action Mode

## Default View



## Managing Files/Folders



### Cannot copy files

- Files may be copy/forward protected. (If a copy/forward protected file is included in selected files, only the remaining files are copied.)



### Copied/moved files cannot be used on PCs, etc.

- Some files may not be usable on other SoftBank handsets or PCs, etc.



### Cannot sort files properly

- Check the number of files/folders in the folder. Files/folders in folders containing 241 or more files/folders are sorted per 240 files/folders in the order they were saved. The order may change when a file/folder is deleted, etc.



### Cannot use some characters in file/folder names

- Single-byte Symbols ¥, /, :, ;, ,, <, >, /, ?, \* and " are not supported.



<b>Infrared</b> .....	<b>12-2</b>
Transferring Files via Infrared .....	12-3
<b>Mass Storage</b> .....	<b>12-5</b>
Connecting PC .....	12-5
<b>Backup</b> .....	<b>12-6</b>
Basics .....	12-6
Backup & Restore.....	12-7

<b>S! Addressbook Back-up (SAB) .....</b>	<b>12-8</b>
About SAB.....	12-8
Backup & Restore .....	12-10
<b>Additional Functions</b> .....	<b>12-11</b>
<b>Troubleshooting</b> .....	<b>12-12</b>

# 12

## Connectivity & File Backup



## Infrared

Wirelessly transfer files between 840SH and compatible devices.

### Transferable Files

Phone Book	Received Msg.
Calendar	Sent Messages
Tasks	Drafts
Bookmarks	Templates (Messaging)
Notepad	Data Folder

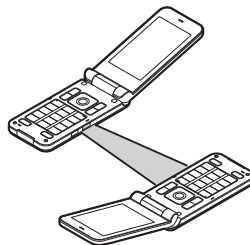
- Copy/forward protected files are not transferable.
- Some files may not be transferable; some settings may be lost, or files may not be saved properly. For details, see "Troubleshooting" at the end of this chapter.

### Getting Started

#### Infrared Precautions

Align Infrared Ports of both devices.

- Handset cannot receive connection requests during Software Update.



- Do not place objects between devices.
- Keep Infrared Ports aligned during transfer.
- Do not look into Infrared Port during infrared transmissions. Eyesight may be affected.

### Transfer Options

<b>One File Transfer</b>	Transfer single files
<b>All File Transfer</b>	Transfer all files by function

- Some transfer options may be unavailable depending on file type.
- Transfer Memory Card files one by one.

#### Authorization Code


- Four-digit code required for Infrared transfers. All File Transfers possible when codes match. (Authorization Code is changeable for each transfer.)



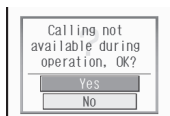
# Transferring Files via Infrared

## Receiving Files

### 1 (Long)

- Infrared is activated. (Alternatively, activate it via Main Menu.)
- Handset receives files if sent within three minutes.
- Handset must be in Standby to accept connection requests.
- To cancel Infrared, Long Press .

### 2 Connection request arrives



Request Window


### 3 Perform subsequent operations

- To cancel transfer, press .

## Subsequent Operations

### ■ One File Transfer

Yes ➔  ➔ Yes ➔ 

- If storage media confirmation appears, select media and press .

### ■ All File Transfer (Adding Files)

Yes ➔  ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔

 ➔ Enter Authorization Code ➔

 ➔ *As New Items* ➔ 

### ■ All File Transfer (Overwriting Existing Files)

Yes ➔  ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔

 ➔ Enter Authorization Code ➔

 ➔ *Delete All & Save* ➔  ➔ Yes

➔ 

- For Phone Book, My Details except handset phone number is overwritten as well.

## Advanced






-  ● Activating Infrared via Main Menu (P.12-11)









## Sending Files

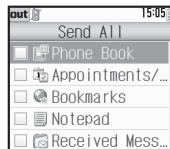
## One File Transfer







Example: Phone Book entry

- 1  ➔ **Select entry** ➔  ➔ **Send Entry** ➔ 
- 2 **Via Infrared** ➔ 
- 3 **Yes** ➔  ➔ **Transfer starts**
  - When complete, entry search window returns.


## All File Transfer

- 1  ➔ **Connectivity** ➔  ➔ **Infrared** ➔ 
- 2 **Send All** ➔ 
- 3 **Yes** ➔  ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔ 



- 4 **Select item** ➔  (  /  ) ➔ **Complete selection** ➔ 
- 5 **Enter Authorization Code** ➔  ➔ **Transfer starts** ➔ 

## Sending Phone Book

- In 5, follow these steps to select whether to send Phone Book Pictures:  
**Yes or No** ➔ 

## Advanced

-  ● Sending My Details ● Sending non-Phone Book files (P.12-11)



## Connecting PC

### Accessing Memory Card from PC

Connect handset to a PC via USB Cable to access Memory Card from the PC without removing card from handset.

- USB Cable may be purchased separately.
- If handset is connected to a PC via USB Cable, disconnect it first.

1  ➔ **Connectivity** ➔ 

2 **Mass Storage** ➔ 

3 **Yes** ➔ 

4 **Connect handset to a PC via USB Cable**

- Use PC to access Memory Card.

5  ➔ **Yes** ➔  ➔

**Connection ends**

- Safely remove handset (recognized as removable hardware device) on the PC, then disconnect USB Cable.

### Utility Software (Japanese)

For more PC-related operations, download Utility Software (including USB Cable driver) from the following URL.

#### Utility Software

<http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/download/tools/utility/>

#### Mobile Data Communication Fees

- Using the Internet by connecting handset to PC/PDA via USB Cable may incur high charges as large-volume packet transmissions tend to occur in a short period of time.



## Basics

Back up information to Memory Card, and restore to handset as needed.

### Supported Items

Select items to back up, or transfer all at once.

Items with \* are selectable at once via **Check Selection** in Options menu.

Phone Book*	Drafts*
Calendar*	Templates (Messaging)
Tasks*	Contents Keys
Bookmarks*	Data Folder
Notepad*	Mail Groups
Received Msg.*	User Dictionary
Sent Messages*	

### Precautions

- Not available if battery is low.
- Some items may not be transferable; some settings may be lost, or files may not transfer properly. For details, see "Troubleshooting" at the end of this chapter.

### Transferring All Items

- Use blank Memory Card for **Backup All Items**. Do not use the card to save other files after **Backup All Items**; backed up content may not be restored properly.

### Contents Keys

- Moving Keys to Memory Card creates a special file. Performing Backup again on the same Memory Card overwrites that file. Perform Restore beforehand.

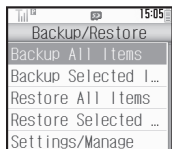


# Backup & Restore

## Handset to Memory Card

Follow these steps to back up selected items at once:

- 1 ➔ **Connectivity** ➔ ➔ **Backup/Restore** ➔



Backup/Restore Menu

- 2 **Backup Selected Items** ➔ ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔

- 3 **Yes** ➔

- 4 **Select item** ➔ (/✔) ➔ **Complete selection**

- For **Phone Book**, a confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** or **No** and press .

- 5 ➔ **Yes** ➔
  - To cancel, press .

- 6 **Backup complete** ➔ ➔

### Selecting Multiple Items at Once

In 4, ➔ **Select option** ➔ ➔

From 5

### Selecting/Canceling All Items

In 4, ➔ **Check All or Uncheck All**

➔

## Memory Card to Handset

Follow these steps to restore selected items:

(Restoring backed up content to handset overwrites current--with the exception of Contents Keys--handset content.)

- 1 In Backup/Restore menu, **Restore Selected Items** ➔ ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔

- 2 **Yes** ➔

- 3 **Select item** ➔ (/✔) ➔ **Complete selection**

- 4
  - If no file list appears, skip ahead to 7.

- 5 **Select file** ➔
  - Repeat 5 to complete selection.

- 6

- 7 **Yes** ➔
  - To cancel, press .

- 8 **Restore complete** ➔ ➔

### Selecting Multiple Items at Once

In 3, ➔ **Select option** ➔ ➔

From 4

### Selecting/Canceling All Items

In 3, ➔ **Check All or Uncheck All**

➔

### Changing Restoration Method

After 3, select item ➔ ➔ **Change to Add Mode or Chg. to Overwrite Mode** ➔ ➔ From 4

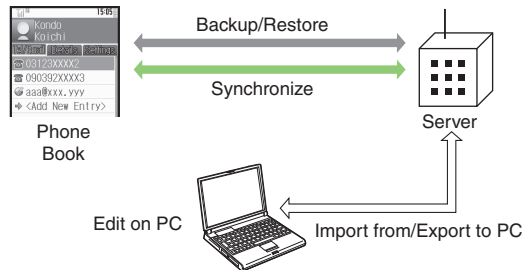
## Advanced

- Backing up all items ● Encoding data for backup ● Restoring all items ● Deleting backup files (P.12-11)



## About SAB

Back up Phone Book content in SAB; add Phone Book changes to SAB anytime. Edit SAB online via PC; add SAB changes to Phone Book anytime. Restore lost or altered Phone Book content from SAB.



- SAB requires a separate contract and basic monthly fee.
- Use SAB to add Phone Book content to a new compatible SoftBank handset; some conditions apply (P.12-9).
- Use a PC to edit SAB online.
- For more about SAB, see SoftBank Mobile Website (P.14-21).
- Sync commands (Backup, Restore and Synchronize) all incur packet transmission fees.

### Auto Synchronization

- When subscribed to SAB, Network Information retrieval activates auto synchronization (Set Auto Sync: **On**, Set Frequency: **After Editing Ph.Book(10 min.)**, Set Sync Mode: **Synchronize**); Phone Book changes are added to SAB automatically.
- Cancel auto synchronization as needed. However, it reactivates after Network Information retrieval.

## SAB Sync Commands & Features

Backup/ Restore	Backup	Export Phone Book content to SAB <sup>1</sup>
	Restore	Import SAB content to Phone Book <sup>2</sup>
Synchronize	Synchronize	Synchronize Phone Book and SAB <sup>3</sup>
	Sync from Client	Add Phone Book changes to SAB <sup>4</sup>
	Sync from Server	Add SAB changes to Phone Book <sup>5</sup>
Edit on PC	Import from PC	Upload PC address book info to SAB
	Export to PC	Export SAB content to PC address book
	Sync Lock	Prevent synchronization from handset
Send Notice <sup>6</sup>	Birthday Notification	SAB sends reminders via SMS to handset
	Email Address Notification <sup>7</sup>	Send new handset mail address to specified addresses
	"Disaster Message Board" Message Notification <sup>8</sup>	Send emergency message board update to specified addresses
Spam Filter	Tomodachi Email Filter <sup>9</sup>	Always accept messages from mail addresses saved in SAB

<sup>1</sup> Any existing SAB content is deleted.

<sup>2</sup> Any existing Phone Book content is deleted.

<sup>3</sup> If the same entry item is edited in Phone Book and SAB, SAB content is referenced.

<sup>4</sup> Unrelated SAB changes remain.

<sup>5</sup> Unrelated Phone Book changes remain.

<sup>6</sup> Access this function via handset (My SoftBank; Japanese) or a PC.

<sup>7</sup> Backup resets notification setting; handset address is sent to all addresses.

<sup>8</sup> Backup resets notification setting; updates are not sent to any address.

<sup>9</sup> Export Phone Book content to SAB beforehand.



## Service Usage Outline

### Complete Contract

Visit a SoftBank Shop, dial 157 from a SoftBank handset for SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information or access My SoftBank (Japanese).



### Receive User ID & Password

After subscription, user ID and password arrive via SMS.

- User ID and password are required to use SAB via a PC.



### Use SAB

Export Phone Book content to SAB.

## Precautions

### ■ Unsynchronizable Items

These Phone Book settings are lost:

- Picture, Tone/Video, Vibration

### ■ Unintentional Phone Book or SAB Content Deletion

- When no Phone Book content exists, selecting **Synchronize**, **Sync from Client** or **Backup** deletes all SAB content.
- When no SAB content exists, selecting **Synchronize**, **Sync from Server** or **Restore** deletes all Phone Book content.

### ■ Phone Book ⇄ SAB Content Capacity Disparities

When the number of savable items varies between Phone Book and SAB entries, synchronization reflects lower limit.

### ■ Contract Termination

SAB content is deleted upon contract termination.

### ■ SAB Transfers to New Handsets

- **SAB-Compatible 3G Handsets**  
SAB remains as last saved and is fully accessible.
- **Other 3G Handsets**  
SAB remains as last saved and is accessible via PC.
- **V3/V4/V5/V6/V8 Series**  
Service contract is terminated and SAB content is deleted.

### ■ When Double Number is Active

Regardless of usage mode setting, all Phone Book content is backed up.

## Advanced

- Canceling auto synchronization (P.12-11)

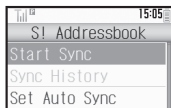


## Backup & Restore

### Backup (Phone Book → SAB)

Any existing SAB content is deleted.

- 1 ➔ **Phone** ➔ ➔ **S! Addressbook Back-up** ➔



S! Addressbook Menu

- 2 **Start Sync** ➔ ➔ **Backup** ➔

- 3 **Yes** ➔ ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔

- Backup starts; when complete, details appear.

- 4 ➔ **Backup complete**

#### Canceling Backup

➔ **Yes** ➔

### Restore (SAB → Phone Book)

Any existing Phone Book content is deleted.

- 1 In S! Addressbook menu, **Start Sync** ➔ ➔ **Restore** ➔

- 2 **Yes** ➔ ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔

- Restore starts; when complete, details appear.

- 3 ➔ **Restore complete**

#### Canceling Restore

➔ **Yes** ➔

### Synchronizing Phone Book

Synchronize Options:

<b>Synchronize</b>	Synchronize Phone Book and SAB
<b>Sync from Client</b>	Add Phone Book changes to SAB
<b>Sync from Server</b>	Add SAB changes to Phone Book

If this is your first use of SAB (new handset), synchronization is performed via Synchronize regardless of selection.

- 1 In S! Addressbook menu, **Start Sync** ➔ ➔ **Select option** ➔

- 2 **Yes** ➔ ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔

- Synchronization starts; when complete, details appear.

- 3 ➔ **Synchronization complete**

#### Canceling Synchronization

➔ **Yes** ➔

### Advanced

- Changing auto synchronization settings ● Confirming password ● Opening log (P.12-11)



Infrared	
Activating Infrared via Main Menu	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Connectivity → Infrared → Switch On/Off → On(3 min.)</li> </ul>
Sending My Details	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>0 → Send My Card → Via Infrared → Yes → Transfer starts</li> </ul>
Sending non-Phone Book files	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In file list, select file → Send → Via Infrared → Yes → Transfer starts</li> </ul>

Backup	
Backup & Restore	
Backing up all items	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Connectivity → Backup/Restore → Backup All Items → Enter Handset Code → Yes → Yes → Backup complete</li> </ul>
Encoding data for backup	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Connectivity → Backup/Restore → Settings/Manage → Encode Settings → Select item → On</li> <li>Available for Phone Book, Messaging folders, Calendar and Tasks.</li> </ul>
Restoring all items	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Connectivity → Backup/Restore → Restore All Items → Enter Handset Code → Yes → Yes → Restore complete</li> </ul>

## Backup Files

Deleting backup files	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Connectivity → Backup/Restore → Settings/Manage → File Management → Select item → Select file ( / ) → Complete selection → Yes</li> </ul>
-----------------------	--

## S! Addressbook Back-up

Canceling auto synchronization	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Phone → S! Addressbook Back-up → Set Auto Sync → Enter Handset Code → Set On/Off → Off</li> </ul>
Changing auto synchronization settings	<p>Start Here → Phone → S! Addressbook Back-up → Set Auto Sync → Enter Handset Code → See below</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Set Set On/Off to On beforehand.</li> </ul> <p><b>Changing Auto Sync Frequency</b></p> <p>Set Frequency → Select frequency → Enter/select date/time/day of the week</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For After Editing Ph.Book(10 min.), omit steps for date, time, etc.</li> </ul> <p><b>Changing Auto Sync Command</b></p> <p>Set Sync Mode → Select command</p>
Confirming password	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>メニューリスト → My SoftBank → English → Password confirmation for S! Address Book</li> <li>Follow onscreen instructions.</li> </ul>
Opening log	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Phone → S! Addressbook Back-up → Sync History → Select record</li> </ul>



## File Transfer



### Some files are not received

- If storage limit is reached during transfers, remaining files will not be received.



### Cannot receive/accept connection requests even when Infrared is On

- Handset may not be in Standby.
- Keypad Lock/Function Lock may be active.
- Software Update may be in progress.



### Phone Book settings are lost

- One file transfer resets these settings:
  - Category, Tone/Video, Vibration, Secret
- Picture setting may be lost depending on image; send the image separately and reassign it.



### Calendar/Tasks settings are lost

- One file transfer resets these settings:
  - Alarm Tone/Video, Secret



### Bookmarks are not saved properly

- Large Bookmarks may not be received correctly.
- Streaming Bookmarks are saved as Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks.



### Messages are not saved properly on handset

- Messages may not be received depending on the size.
- Messages received via One File Transfer are saved to Other Documents folder and cannot be used as messages.
- Sky Mail may be received as S! Mail when transferred from other SoftBank handsets via All File Transfer.
- In All File Transfers, overwriting messaging folders deletes sort keys.



### Messages are not saved properly on recipient devices

- Mail Notices are saved as messages, invalidating complete message retrieval.
- When sending messages to other handset models via All File Transfer, Spam Folder messages may be saved to the incoming message folder.
- When sending messages in Drafts to other handset models via All File Transfer, only the first entered recipient may remain or SMS addressed to multiple recipients may not be saved.



### Cannot find files in DCIM folder

- Received files in DCIM folder are saved to Pictures folder.

## Infrared



### Infrared transfer fails

- Infrared Port may be obstructed by dust, etc.; clean with soft cloth.
- Transfers may fail in direct sunlight, under fluorescent lighting or near infrared equipment.



## Backup & Restore

### ? Backup fails

- Check handset/Memory Card memory; backup may fail if the memory is low.

### ? Some files are not restored

- If storage limit is reached during Restore, remaining files will not be restored.

### ? Cannot use backup files on other SoftBank handsets or PCs

- Some backup files may not be usable on other SoftBank handsets or PCs.

### ? Cannot open backup files

- Some backup files may open only after being restored to handset.

### ? Phone Book settings are lost

- Picture setting may be lost depending on image; send the image separately and reassign it.

### ? Messages are not saved properly

- Transfer may delete sort keys.
- Mail Notices are restored as messages, invalidating complete message retrieval.

### ? Bookmarks are not saved properly

- Yahoo! Keitai, Streaming and PC Site Browser Bookmarks are all backed up as a single file.
- Streaming Bookmarks are saved as Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks.

## ■ Exporting Backed Up Data to Other SoftBank Handsets

### ? Messages are not saved properly

- If spam filter is available on recipient handset, Spam Folder messages are saved in spam folder regardless of the setting. (If unavailable, they are saved as normal received messages.)
- When restoring draft messages, only the first entered recipient may remain or SMS addressed to multiple recipients may not be saved.

## ■ Importing Data Backed Up on Other SoftBank Handsets

### ? Messages are not saved properly

- Messages may not be restored depending on the size.
- Sky Mail may be restored as S! Mail.



<b>Date &amp; Time .....</b>	<b>13-2</b>
<b>Display &amp; Illumination .....</b>	<b>13-3</b>
Language.....	13-3
Image & Text.....	13-3
Display & Key Illumination .....	13-3
External Display.....	13-4
Standby Display.....	13-4
Key Illumination .....	13-4

<b>Ringtones &amp; Sounds .....</b>	<b>13-5</b>
Handset Response.....	13-5
System Sounds .....	13-5
Additional Sound Settings .....	13-5
<b>Connectivity .....</b>	<b>13-6</b>
Network .....	13-6
Location Information.....	13-6
<b>Reset.....</b>	<b>13-7</b>
Restoring Default Settings.....	13-7

# 13
















































































## Handset Customization



# Date & Time Settings

## Date & Time

[Start Here](#)   **Settings**   In Sound/Display menu, **Date & Time**  

Setting the date and time	<b>Set Date/Time</b>   Enter the year  Enter the month  Enter the day  Enter the time  
Correcting Clock manually	<b>Time Correction</b>   <b>Manual</b>   <b>Yes</b>  
Disabling auto Clock correction	<b>Time Correction</b>   <b>Auto Corr. Setting</b>   <b>Off</b>  
Setting auto Clock correction timing	<b>Time Correction</b>    <b>Auto Corr. Setting</b>   <b>On</b>   Select item   (                                       
Changing time format to 12 hour	<b>Time Format</b>   <b>12 Hour</b>  
Changing date format	<b>Date Format</b>   <b>Select option</b>  
Starting the Calendar week on Monday	<b>Calendar Format</b>   <b>Monday-Sunday</b>  



# Display & Illumination Settings 1

## Language

[Start Here](#) [ ] ➔ **Settings** ➔ [ ] ➔ Sound/Display menu

Switching interface between Japanese and English

**Language or 言語選択** ➔ [ ] ➔ **English or 日本語** ➔ [ ]

## Image & Text

[Start Here](#) [ ] ➔ **Settings** ➔ [ ] ➔ In Sound/Display menu, **Display** ➔ [ ]

Showing preloaded images for incoming calls, etc.

**System Graphics** ➔ [ ] ➔ **Select item** ➔ [ ] ➔ **Preset Animation (or Pattern 1 to Pattern 3)** ➔ [ ]

Showing Data Folder images for incoming calls, etc.

**System Graphics** ➔ [ ] ➔ **Select item** ➔ [ ] ➔ **Select folder** ➔ [ ] ➔ **Select image** ➔ [ ] ➔ **Specify image area** ➔ [ ]  
 • Some images may be usable without specifying image area.

Showing Customized Screen for incoming calls, etc.

**System Graphics** ➔ [ ] ➔ **Select item** ➔ [ ] ➔ **Customized Screen** ➔ [ ] ➔ [ ]  
 • Not available for **Power On** or **Power Off**.

Changing font of numbers entered in Standby

**Dial Number** ➔ [ ] ➔ **Select pattern** ➔ [ ]

Showing a message each time handset is turned on

**Greeting Message** ➔ [ ] ➔ **Edit Message** ➔ [ ] ➔ **Enter message** ➔ [ ] ➔ **Switch On/Off** ➔ [ ] ➔ **On** ➔ [ ]

## Display & Key Illumination

[Start Here](#) [ ] ➔ **Settings** ➔ [ ] ➔ In Sound/Display menu, **Display** ➔ [ ]

Changing Display/Keypad Backlight illumination time

**Backlight** ➔ [ ] ➔ **Time Out** ➔ [ ] ➔ **Select time** ➔ [ ]

Changing Display Brightness

**Backlight** ➔ [ ] ➔ **Brightness** ➔ [ ] ➔ **Adjust level** ➔ [ ]

Changing inactivity time after which Display turns off

**Display Saving** ➔ [ ] ➔ **Select period** ➔ [ ]



## Display & Illumination Settings 2

### External Display

[Start Here](#) Settings In Sound/Display menu, Display External Display

Changing inactivity time after which External Display turns off	Duration    Select time
Hiding new received messages	Messages    Not Display
Hiding caller info	Caller Display    Off
Changing Clock view	Display Date&Time    Select type
Changing Clock font	Clock Type    Select pattern

### Standby Display

[Start Here](#) Settings In Sound/Display menu, Display Standby Display

Changing Clock/Calendar	Clock/Calendar    Select type
Selecting display option	Standby Window    Display Window    Select option
Showing Network service provider name in Standby	Show Operator Name    On

### Key Illumination

[Start Here](#) Settings Phone/ menu

Disabling Keypad light illumination	Set Key Light    Off
-------------------------------------	----------------------



# 🔊 Ringtone & Sound Settings

## Handset Response

[Start Here](#) ➤ **Settings** ➤ **In Sound/Display menu, Sounds & Alerts** ➤

Changing ringtone volume	<b>Volume</b> ➤ <b>Select item</b> ➤ <b>Adjust level</b> ➤
Selecting illumination option for incoming transmissions	<b>Event Light</b> ➤ <b>Select item</b> ➤ <b>On, Link to Sound or Off</b> ➤
Enabling/disabling illumination for missed incoming transmissions	<b>Status Light</b> ➤ <b>Select item</b> ➤ <b>On or Off</b> ➤
Answering calls with other keys	<b>Any Key Answer</b> ➤ <b>On</b> ➤ • Use [0-9], *, #, *, *, *, * or * in addition to *.
Muting ringer with other keys	<b>Any Key Answer</b> ➤ <b>Only Mute</b> ➤ • Use [0-9], *, #, *, *, *, * or * in addition to *.

## System Sounds

[Start Here](#) ➤ **Settings** ➤ **In Sound/Display menu, Sounds & Alerts** ➤

Enabling Keypad Tones	<b>System Sounds</b> ➤ <b>Keypad Tones</b> ➤ <b>Select tone</b> ➤
Changing other System Sounds	<b>System Sounds</b> ➤ <b>Select item</b> ➤ <b>Tone or Sound</b> ➤ <b>Select folder</b> ➤ <b>Select tone/file</b> ➤ • For files with limited usage period, choose <b>Yes</b> and press *.
Disabling System Sounds	<b>System Sounds</b> ➤ <b>Select item</b> ➤ <b>Tone or Sound</b> ➤ <b>Off</b> ➤
Changing System Sound duration	<b>System Sounds</b> ➤ <b>Select item</b> ➤ <b>Duration</b> ➤ <b>Select/enter time</b> ➤
Changing System Sound volume	<b>Volume</b> ➤ <b>General Volume</b> ➤ <b>Adjust level</b> ➤

## Additional Sound Settings

[Start Here](#) ➤ **Settings** ➤ **Sound/Display menu**

Disabling Speaker when using Headphones	<b>Ringer Output</b> ➤ <b>Earphone</b> ➤
Activating Speaker surround	<b>Sounds &amp; Alerts</b> ➤ <b>Surround</b> ➤ <b>On</b> ➤



# Connectivity Settings

## Network

[Start Here](#) → Settings → Network

Retrieving Network Information	<i>Retrieve NW Info</i> → Yes
Checking Network status	<i>Network Info</i>
Editing connection names for mobile data communication	<i>External Device</i> → Select name → Edit
Clearing connection names for mobile data communication	<i>External Device</i> → Reset → Enter Handset Code → Yes

## Location Information

[Start Here](#) → Settings → Network → Location Info

Adding/editing Location Information destination URLs	<i>URL Setting</i> → <Empty> (or select URL) → Edit → Enter URL • Default URL is not editable.
Specifying Location Information destination URL	<i>URL Setting</i> → Select URL
Viewing Location Information destination URL	<i>URL Setting</i> → Select URL → Display
Deleting Location Information destination URLs	<i>URL Setting</i> → Select URL → Delete → Yes
Hiding Location Information	<i>Datum On/Off</i> → Off → Enter Handset Code
Changing Location Information confirmation option	<i>Location Property</i> → Select option
Suppressing Information window after sending Location Information automatically	<i>Inform Location</i> → Do not Show → Enter Handset Code
Opening sent Location Information records	<i>Offer Loc. Logs</i> → Select record
Deleting a sent Location Information record	<i>Offer Loc. Logs</i> → Select record → Delete → Yes
Deleting all sent Location Information records	<i>Offer Loc. Logs</i> → Delete All → Yes



# Reset Settings

## Restoring Default Settings

[Start Here](#) ➤ **Settings** ➤ **Phone/** ➤ **Master Reset** ➤

Restoring default handset settings

**Reset Settings** ➤ **Enter Handset Code** ➤ **Yes** ➤ **Yes**

- Some default settings may not be restored.

Clearing all Phone Book entries, Data Folder files, etc.

**Reset All** ➤ **Enter Handset Code** ➤ **Yes** ➤ **Yes**

- Files and records deleted by Reset All cannot be restored. Reset All deletes all downloaded S! Applications.
- Handset Code returns to the default setting.

- A confirmation may appear before entering Handset Code; end the current function to proceed.



<b>USIM Card</b> .....	<b>14-2</b>
About USIM Card .....	14-2
USIM Card Installation.....	14-3
<b>Battery</b> .....	<b>14-4</b>
Battery Installation.....	14-4
<b>Software Update</b> .....	<b>14-5</b>
<b>Troubleshooting</b> .....	<b>14-6</b>
<b>Key Assignments</b> .....	<b>14-8</b>
<b>Pager Codes</b> .....	<b>14-10</b>
Pager Code List .....	14-10

<b>Character Codes</b> .....	<b>14-11</b>
Character Code List .....	14-11
<b>Weather Indicators</b> .....	<b>14-17</b>
Weather Indicator List .....	14-17
<b>Specifications</b> .....	<b>14-18</b>
Memory Card Structure & Contents ...	14-22
<b>Menu List</b> .....	<b>14-23</b>
<b>Index</b> .....	<b>14-29</b>
<b>Warranty &amp; Service</b> .....	<b>14-35</b>
<b>Customer Service</b> .....	<b>14-36</b>

# 14

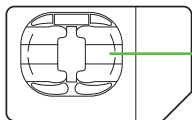
## Appendix



## About USIM Card

USIM Card is an IC card containing customer and authentication information, including the handset number. USIM Card must be inserted to use this handset. Save Phone Book entries on USIM Card Phone Book to use them on other SoftBank handsets. Depending on the USIM Card in use, some entry items may not be supported, and some limits (character entry, etc.) may be lower.

### Precautions



IC Chip

- Do not insert USIM Card into any other IC card device. SoftBank Mobile is not liable for resulting damages.
- Keep the USIM Card IC chip clean; malfunction may result. Clean with soft dry cloth.
- Do not attach labels to USIM Card. Malfunction may result.

### Important

- USIM Card is the property of SoftBank Mobile.
- USIM Card will be reissued for a fee if lost or damaged.
- Return USIM Card to SoftBank Mobile upon subscription termination.
- Returned USIM Cards are recycled.
- USIM Card specifications may change without prior notice.
- Back up USIM Card files. SoftBank Mobile is not liable for lost files.
- If your USIM Card or handset (with USIM Card inserted) is lost or stolen, suspend your service immediately. For details, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P.14-36).

### USIM PIN

4-digit code (**9999** by default); activate PIN Entry to restrict usage.

#### PIN Lock

- Entering incorrect PIN three consecutive times activates PIN Lock, limiting handset use.

#### Canceling PIN Lock

- Contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P.14-36) for your Personal Unblocking Key (PUK Code) and follow these steps:

**Enter PUK Code** ➡ ➡ **Enter new PIN** ➡ ➡ **Re-enter new PIN** ➡

- Write down PUK code.

#### PUK Lock

- Entering incorrect PUK Code ten consecutive times activates PUK Lock, disabling handset. Contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P.14-36) for recovery.

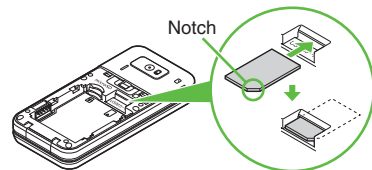


## USIM Card Installation

- Do not apply excessive force to insert/remove USIM Card.
- USIM Card must be inserted to use this handset.

### Inserting

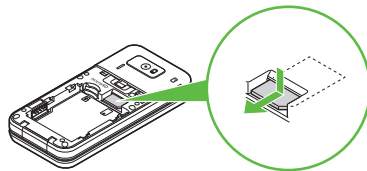
- 1 Remove battery (P.14-4)
- 2 Slide in USIM Card with IC chip facing down



- Reinstall battery (P.14-4).

### Removing

- 1 Remove battery
- 2 Gently slide out USIM Card as shown



- Reinstall battery.
- Take care not to lose removed USIM Card.

### After Repairs, USIM Card Replacement or Handset Upgrade/Replacement

- Some downloaded files may be inaccessible. In addition, S! Applications and BookSurfing® may be disabled after USIM Card replacement.



## Battery Installation

### About Battery

- Charge battery at least once every six months; an uncharged battery may become unusable or affect files/settings.
- Depending on usage, bulges may appear near end of battery life; this does not affect safety.
- Replace battery if operating time shortens noticeably.
- Clean device charging terminals with a dry cotton swab.

### Lithium-ion Battery

- This product requires a lithium-ion battery. Lithium-ion batteries are a recyclable resource.

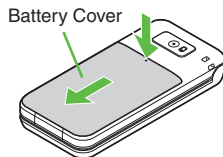


Li-ion00

- To recycle a used lithium-ion battery, take it to any shop displaying the symbol shown above.
- To avoid fire or electric shock, do not short-circuit or disassemble battery.

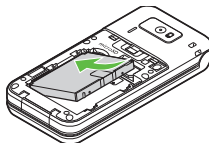
### Inserting & Removing

#### 1 Remove cover



- Press and slide cover then lift as shown.

#### 2 Insert battery



- With logo side up, fit tabs into battery cavity slots.

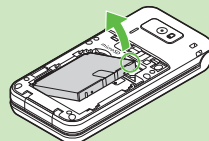
#### 3 Close cover



- Position and slide the cover gently as shown until it stops.

### Removing

- Turn handset power off and lift battery as shown.



- If battery sticks, pull Battery Tab and lift.



## Software Update

Check for firmware updates and download as required.

### Precautions

- Handset is disabled until update is complete. Update may take up to approximately 30 minutes.
- Update failure may disable handset. To reduce failure risk, make sure signal is strong and stable, and charge battery beforehand.
- Update will not start if other functions are in use. Before updating software (or before scheduled update time), end all active functions/applications.
- Disconnect USB Cable beforehand to reduce failure risk.
- Always back up important information. SoftBank Mobile cannot be held liable for damages from lost information, etc.

### Updating Software

Packet transmission fees do not apply to updates (including checking, downloading and rewriting).

1  ➔ **Settings** ➔  ➔ **Software Update** ➔ 


2 **Software Update** ➔ 

- Follow onscreen instructions.

### Update Result

In 2, **Update Result** ➔ 

### Scheduled Update


A confirmation appears at scheduled update time. Press  or wait a while for update to start.

### When Updated

Update success notification appears and handset reboots.

After reboot, completion message appears and Information window opens.

### Update Result

While Information window appears, **Update Result** ➔ 



### Reboot Failure

- If handset does not return to Standby after update, turn power off, reinsert battery, then restart it. If it still does not restart, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance (P.14-36).



## Troubleshooting

### ■ General

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
<b>Handset won't turn on</b>	Was  pressed long enough?	Press  longer.
	Battery may need to be charged or replaced.	Charge battery or install a charged battery.
	Battery may not be properly installed.	Install battery properly (P.14-4).
<b>Handset won't respond</b>	Is Switch On/Off in PIN Entry <b>On</b> ?	If <b>On</b> , PIN is required. Enter PIN according to onscreen prompt.
<b>Insert USIM Card appears</b>	USIM Card may not be properly inserted.	Turn power off and check that USIM Card is properly inserted, then restart handset. If the message still appears, USIM may be damaged.
	The correct USIM Card may not be inserted.	Make sure the correct USIM Card is inserted. The inserted USIM Card may not be valid.
	There may be debris on IC chip/terminals.	Clean relevant parts with dry cloth and re-insert.
<b>REFRESH appears and handset returns to Standby</b>	Handset may have been dropped or subjected to shocks.	Handset failed to recognize USIM Card temporarily. This is not a malfunction.
<b>Keypad won't respond</b>	Keypad Lock may be active.	Cancel Keypad Lock (P.1-17).
	Function Lock may be active.	Cancel Function Lock (P.10-2).

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
<b>Battery strength indicator flashes when not charging</b>	Ambient temperature may be outside 5°C to 35°C.	Use within an ambient temperature of 5°C - 35°C.
<b>Saved entry/folder does not appear on handset</b>	Entry/folder may be set to Secret.	Activate Show Secret Data (P.10-3).
<b>Cannot use Predictive</b>	Show Secret Data may be active.	Cancel Show Secret Data.
<b>Handset/AC Charger feels warm</b>	Handset/AC Charger may warm while charging.	Unless handset/AC Charger is too hot to touch, warmth is considered normal. Always avoid prolonged skin contact to prevent burn injuries.
	Handset may warm during extended periods of use.	
	Handset may warm during Video Calls.	
<b>Cannot access Memory Card files</b>	Memory Card may not be properly formatted.	Use 840SH-formatted Memory Cards.
<b>Clock settings are lost</b>	Did you leave handset without battery?	Clock settings remain even when removing battery for replacement, etc. However, if handset is left with no battery or an exhausted one for an extended period of time (approximately one hour), Clock will need to be reset.



## ■ Charger/Battery

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
<b>Battery charges quickly</b>	Remaining charge shortens charging time.	This is normal.
	Battery may be terminally exhausted or defective. (Small Light flashes red.)	Replace battery with a new one.
<b>Battery charges slowly</b>	Charging slows during Video Calls.	End the call to charge faster.
	Battery may be charging via USB.	Use AC Charger.
<b>Battery won't charge</b>	AC Charger may not be properly connected to handset.	Make sure connector is securely inserted and retry.
	AC Charger may not be firmly plugged in to AC outlet.	Remove plug from outlet, re-insert and retry.
	Battery may not be properly installed.	Install battery properly (P.14-4).
	Battery, AC Charger, or Charging Terminals, or Device Port may be obstructed by dust, etc.	Clean terminals, connector and Port with a dry cotton swab and retry.
	Charger, etc. may not be supported.	Use specified AC Charger, etc. only; others may damage battery.

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
<b>Battery Time seems shorter than usual</b>	High power consuming operations are in use.	Keep handset closed in Standby; reduce S! Application, Media Player and camera use, and limit transmissions/external connections.
	Using handset in poor conditions may shorten Battery Time.	Avoid prolonged use of handset out-of-range or in poor signal conditions.
	Power hungry settings may be active.	Lower Brightness, select shorter Display Saving/ Backlight time, etc.



## Key Assignments

Key	Kanji (Hiragana) [Double-byte]	Katakana [Double & Single-byte]	Alphanumerics [Double & Single-byte]	Numbers [Single-byte]	Character Codes
1	あいうえお あいうえお	アイウエオ アイウエオ	@./_-1 (space)	1	1
2	かきくけこ	カキクケコ	ABCabc2	2	2
3	さしすせそ	サシスセソ	DEFdef3	3	3
4	たちつとっ	タチツテトッ	GHIghi4	4	4
5	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ	JKLjkl5	5	5
6	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ	MNOmno6	6	6
7	まみむめも	マミムメモ	PQRSpqrs7	7	7
8	やゆよゃゅょ	ヤユヨャュョ	TUVtuv8	8	8
9	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ	WXYZwxyz9	9	9
0	わをんー ・	ワヲンー ・	0	0	0
✕	Log, Pictogram List (double-byte), Symbol List <sup>3</sup>				✕ + P (pause) ? - <sup>2</sup>
#	、。 (line break) ? ! (space)		、。 (line break) ?! (space)	#	

<sup>1</sup> - is available only in single-byte katakana entry.

<sup>2</sup> Available for phone number entry; some characters may not be enterable in some windows.

<sup>3</sup> May not be enterable in some windows.





Key	Kanji (Hiragana) [Double-byte]	Katakana [Double & Single-byte]	Alphanumerics [Double & Single-byte]	Numbers [Single-byte]	Character Codes
	Conversion (up) <sup>4</sup>	Cursor up			
	Conversion (down) <sup>5</sup>	Cursor down  (line break)			
	Cursor left				
	Cursor right				
	Switch entry modes (except during conversion)				
	Toggle Personal Mode <sup>6</sup>	_____	Toggle Personal Mode <sup>6,7</sup>	_____	
	Toggle case (for some characters)			_____	
	_____	Toggle mode (upper/ lower and lower case)			
	Delete one character				
	Cancel conversion	_____	Cancel conversion <sup>7</sup>	_____	Delete code
 (Long)	Delete before or after cursor				
	Recover characters deleted with				
	Re-convert <sup>8</sup>	_____	Re-convert <sup>7,8</sup>	_____	
	OK				
	Phonetic Conversion <sup>6</sup>	_____			
	Hiragana to Katakana/ Alphanumeric Conversion <sup>6</sup>	_____			

<sup>4</sup>Cursor moves up except during conversion.<sup>5</sup>Cursor moves down except during conversion.<sup>6</sup>Available during conversion.<sup>7</sup>Available only in single-byte alphanumeric entry.<sup>8</sup>Press immediately after inserting characters to re-convert them.



## Pager Code List

Gray background indicates upper and lower case available. Press  to switch immediately after character entry.

### Double-byte Upper Case

		Second Digit (Press Next)									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First Digit (Press First)	1	あ	い	う	え	お	A	B	C	D	E
	2	か	き	く	け	こ	F	G	H	I	J
	3	さ	し	す	せ	そ	K	L	M	N	O
	4	た	ち	つ	て	と	P	Q	R	S	T
	5	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	U	V	W	X	Y
	6	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ	Z	?	!	-	/
	7	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	&			*1
	8	や	(	ゆ	)	よ	*	#	Space		*2
	9	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4	5
	0	わ	を	ん	ゝ	ゞ	6	7	8	9	0

### Single-byte Upper Case



		Second Digit (Press Next)									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First Digit (Press First)	1	ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	A	B	C	D	E
	2	カ	キ	ク	ケ	コ	F	G	H	I	J
	3	サ	シ	ス	セ	ソ	K	L	M	N	O
	4	タ	チ	ツ	テ	ト	P	Q	R	S	T
	5	ナ	ニ	ヌ	ネ	ノ	U	V	W	X	Y
	6	ハ	ヒ	フ	ヘ	ホ	Z	?	!	-	/
	7	マ	ミ	ム	メ	モ	¥	&			*1
	8	ヤ	(	ユ	)	ヨ	*	#	Space		*2
	9	ラ	リ	ル	レ	ロ	1	2	3	4	5
	0	ワ	ヲ	ン	ゝ	ゞ	6	7	8	9	0


### Double-byte Lower Case

		Second Digit (Press Next)									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First Digit (Press First)	1	あ	い	う	え	お	a	b	c	d	e
	2						f	g	h	i	j
	3						k	l	m	n	o
	4			つ			p	q	r	s	t
	5						u	v	w	x	y
	6						z				
	7										*1
	8	や		ゆ		よ					*2
	9										
	0				ゝ	ゞ					

### Single-byte Lower Case

		Second Digit (Press Next)									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First Digit (Press First)	1	ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	a	b	c	d	e
	2						f	g	h	i	j
	3						k	l	m	n	o
	4			ツ			p	q	r	s	t
	5						u	v	w	x	y
	6						z				
	7										*1
	8	ヤ		ユ		ヨ					*2
	9										
	0				ゝ	ゞ					

\*1 Press  to insert  (line break) in mail message text, Notepad, etc.

\*2 Press  to toggle upper and lower case modes.



[illegible]

Last Digit										First Three Digits	Last Digit										First Three Digits	Last Digit										First Three Digits	Last Digit										First Three Digits
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	
198	叶	桦	芽	兜	寬	蒲	金	鎌	230	掘	窟	杏	靴	軋	窪	熊	隈	桑		261										294	夙	淑	祝	嶺	綽	塾	出	術					
199	嘔	鴨	鴉	椿	茅	萱			231	綽	綠	桑	歛	軋	窪	熊	隈	桑		262										295	宿	峻	祝	嶺	綽	塾	出	術					
200	粥	劉	春	瓦	乾	冠	冠	寒	刊	232	郡									263									296	旬	樞	春	潤	塾	巡	緒							
201	勘	勸	喚	堪	乾	冠	冠	寒	刊											264									297	醒	順	春	潤	塾	巡	緒							
202	勤	勸	喚	堪	乾	冠	冠	寒	刊	232	卦	袈	祁	係	傾	刑	兄	啓		265									298	恕	順	春	潤	塾	巡	緒							
203	款	飲	憾	澣	渾	官	官	寒	刊	233	珪	型	袈	祁	係	傾	刑	兄	啓	266									299	勝	匠	升	少	尚	唱	賞							
204	竿	管	緩	緩	渾	官	官	寒	刊	234	携	敬	景	桂	深	稽	系	經		267									300	娶	抄	小	少	尚	唱	賞							
205	舘	貴	鑑	鑑	渾	官	官	寒	刊	235	携	紫	雲	迎	針	擊	擊	擊		268									301	娶	抄	小	少	尚	唱	賞							
206	舘	貴	鑑	鑑	渾	官	官	寒	刊	236	攜	紫	雲	迎	針	擊	擊	擊		269									302	彰	梢	檯	檯	檯	檯	檯							
207	廣	雁	頑	頑	頑	頑	頑	頑	頑	237	傑	侯	健	患	六	券	劫	喧		270									303	松	梢	檯	檯	檯	檯	檯							
										238	侯	健	患	六	券	劫	喧	喧		271									304	紹	肖	肖	肖	肖	肖	肖							
207										239	建	侯	健	患	六	券	劫	喧		272									305	紹	肖	肖	肖	肖	肖	肖							
208	基	奇	姬	崎	奇	希	危	忌	喜	240										273									306	詳	象	賞	賞	賞	賞	賞							
209	旗	奇	姬	崎	奇	希	危	忌	喜	241	肩	見	元	原	言	駭	駭	駭		274									307	文	援	乘	乘	乘	乘	乘							
210										242	駭	駭	駭	駭	駭	駭	駭	駭		275									308	文	援	乘	乘	乘	乘	乘							
211	紀	微	規	規	貴	起	輝	季	稀	243	駭	駭	駭	駭	駭	駭	駭	駭		276									309	釅	釅	嘔	嘔	嘔	嘔	嘔							
212	鬼	龜	偽	儀	義	誼	技	擬	欺	243										277									310	拭	植	殖	燭	燭	職	色							
213	攜	疑	疑	疑	疑	誼	誼	誼	欺	244	姑	孤	孤	孤	孤	孤	孤	孤		278									311	舐	辱	辰	辰	辰	辰	辰							
214	攜	疑	疑	疑	疑	誼	誼	誼	欺	245	糊	袴	己	胡	胡	胡	胡	胡		279									312	心	辱	辰	辰	辰	辰	辰							
215	客	宮	疑	疑	疑	誼	誼	誼	欺	246	糊	袴	己	胡	胡	胡	胡	胡		280									313	心	辱	辰	辰	辰	辰	辰							
216	宮	疑	疑	疑	疑	誼	誼	誼	欺	247	糊	袴	己	胡	胡	胡	胡	胡		281									314	心	辱	辰	辰	辰	辰	辰							
217	宮	疑	疑	疑	疑	誼	誼	誼	欺	248	糊	袴	己	胡	胡	胡	胡	胡		282									315	心	辱	辰	辰	辰	辰	辰							
218	巨	拒	魚	魚	魚	魚	魚	魚	魚	249	幼	幼	幼	幼	幼	幼	幼	幼		283									316	須	醉	醉	醉	醉	醉	醉							
219	禦	魚	魚	魚	魚	魚	魚	魚	魚	250	巧	巧	巧	巧	巧	巧	巧	巧		284									317	炊	睡	睡	睡	睡	睡	睡							
220	卿	扶	扶	扶	扶	扶	扶	扶	扶	251	拘	拘	拘	拘	拘	拘	拘	拘		285									318	瑞	髓	髓	髓	髓	髓	髓							
221	卿	扶	扶	扶	扶	扶	扶	扶	扶	252	拘	拘	拘	拘	拘	拘	拘	拘		286									319	相	眉	眉	眉	眉	眉	眉							
222	卿	扶	扶	扶	扶	扶	扶	扶	扶	253	拘	拘	拘	拘	拘	拘	拘	拘		287									320	相	眉	眉	眉	眉	眉	眉							
223	蕎	蕎	蕎	蕎	蕎	蕎	蕎	蕎	蕎	254	紅	紅	紅	紅	紅	紅	紅	紅		288																							
224	蕎	蕎	蕎	蕎	蕎	蕎	蕎	蕎	蕎	255	紅	紅	紅	紅	紅	紅	紅	紅		289																							
225	蕎	蕎	蕎	蕎	蕎	蕎	蕎	蕎	蕎	256	紅	紅	紅	紅	紅	紅	紅	紅		290																							
226	芹	茵	茵	茵	茵	茵	茵	茵	茵	257	鋼	鋼	鋼	鋼	鋼	鋼	鋼	鋼		291																							
										258	告	告	告	告	告	告	告	告		292																							
226										259	告	告	告	告	告	告	告	告		293																							
227	俱	句	句	句	句	句	句	句	句	260	忽	忽	忽	忽	忽	忽	忽	忽		294																							
228	俱	句	句	句	句	句	句	句	句	261	忽	忽	忽	忽	忽	忽	忽	忽		295																							
229	俱	句	句	句	句	句	句	句	句	262	忽	忽	忽	忽	忽	忽	忽	忽		296																							

14-13




















[illegible]

First Three Digits	Last Digit									First Three Digits	Last Digit									First Three Digits	Last Digit										
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8		9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7		8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
562	愆	惶	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	598	梵	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	634	瀏	瀟	瀟	瀟	瀟	瀟	瀟	瀟	瀟	瀟
563	愆	惶	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	599	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	635	瀏	瀟	瀟	瀟	瀟	瀟	瀟	瀟	瀟	瀟
564	愆	惶	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	600	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	636	炮	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟
565	愆	惶	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	601	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	637	炮	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟
566	愆	惶	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	602	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	638	炮	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟
567	愆	惶	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	603	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	639	炮	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟
568	愆	惶	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	604	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	640	炮	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟
569	愆	惶	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	605	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	641	炮	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟
570	愆	惶	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	606	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	642	炮	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟
571	愆	惶	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	607	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	643	炮	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟
572	愆	惶	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	608	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	644	炮	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟
573	愆	惶	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	609	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	645	炮	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟
574	愆	惶	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	610	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	646	炮	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟
575	愆	惶	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	611	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	647	炮	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟
576	愆	惶	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	612	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	648	炮	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟
577	愆	惶	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	613	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	649	炮	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟
578	愆	惶	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	614	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	650	炮	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟
579	愆	惶	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	615	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	651	炮	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟
580	愆	惶	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	616	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	652	炮	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟
581	愆	惶	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	617	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	653	炮	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟
582	愆	惶	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	618	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	654	炮	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟
583	愆	惶	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	619	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	655	炮	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟
584	愆	惶	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	620	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	656	炮	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟
585	愆	惶	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	621	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	657	炮	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟
586	愆	惶	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	622	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	658	炮	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟
587	愆	惶	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	623	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	659	炮	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟
588	愆	惶	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	624	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	660	炮	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟
589	愆	惶	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	625	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	661	炮	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟
590	愆	惶	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	626	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	662	炮	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟
591	愆	惶	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	627	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	663	炮	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟
592	愆	惶	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	628	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	664	炮	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟
593	愆	惶	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	629	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	665	炮	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟
594	愆	惶	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	630	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	666	炮	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟
595	愆	惶	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	631	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	667	炮	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟
596	愆	惶	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	632	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	668	炮	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟
597	愆	惶	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	633	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	栳	669	炮	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟





First Three Digits	Last Digit									First Three Digits	Last Digit									First Three Digits	Last Digit										
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8		9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7		8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
706	聚	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	742	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	814	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮
707	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	743	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	815	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮
708	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	744	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	816	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮
709	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	745	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	817	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮
710	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	746	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	818	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮
711	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	747	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	819	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮
712	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	748	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	820	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮
713	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	749	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	821	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮
714	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	750	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	822	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮
715	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	751	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	823	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮
716	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	752	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	824	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮
717	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	753	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	825	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮
718	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	754	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	826	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮
719	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	755	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	827	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮
720	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	756	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	828	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮
721	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	757	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	829	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮
722	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	758	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	830	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮
723	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	759	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	831	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮
724	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	760	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	832	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮
725	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	761	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	833	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮
726	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	762	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	834	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮
727	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	763	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	835	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮
728	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	764	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	836	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮
729	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	765	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	837	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮
730	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	766	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	838	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮
731	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	767	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	839	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮
732	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	768	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	840	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮	馮
733	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	769	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻											
734	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	770	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻											
735	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	771	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻											
736	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	772	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻											
737	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	773	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻											
738	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	774	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻											
739	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	775	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻											
740	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	776	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻											
741	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	聾	777	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻											

## Weather Indicator List





### Basic Status

	Clear skies (day)
	Clear skies (night)
	Cloudy
	Rain
	Snow
	Thunder showers
	Chance of rain: 0%
	Chance of rain: 10%
	Chance of rain: 20%
	Chance of rain: 30%
	Chance of rain: 40%
	Chance of rain: 50%
	Chance of rain: 60%
	Chance of rain: 70%
	Chance of rain: 80%
	Chance of rain: 90%
	Chance of rain: 100%
	Then
	Partly/chance of





### Pollen Count

	Low
	Moderate
	High
	Extreme





### Cherry Blossom

	Flowering
	Almost full bloom
	Full bloom
	Beginning of petal fall




### Fall Foliage

	No color change
	Colors appearing
	Peak
	Defoliating




### Ultraviolet

	Low
	Moderate
	High
	Extreme

### Typhoon

	Forming
	Approaching
	Caution necessary

### Other

	Heavy rain
	Gale
	Notification



# Specifications

## SoftBank 840SH

<b>Weight*</b>	99 g
<b>Continuous Talk Time*</b>	250 minutes
<b>Continuous Standby Time*</b>	340 hours (handset closed)
<b>Charging Time (power off)</b>	AC Charger: 140 minutes In-Car Charger: 140 minutes
<b>Dimensions (W x H x D)*</b>	49.6 x 105 x 15.9 mm (handset closed, without protruding parts)
<b>Maximum Output</b>	0.25 W

\*Approximate value.

- Above values calculated with battery installed.
- Continuous Talk Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, in strong signal conditions without moving handset.
- Continuous Standby Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, with handset closed without calls or operations, in strong signal conditions without moving handset.
- Talk Time/Standby Time may vary with environment, status, settings, etc.
- Display employs precision technology, however, some pixels may appear brighter/darker.

## Handset Materials

Parts	Materials & Finishing
Housing (Display back, Keypad side, Keypad back), Battery Cover	ABS resin/UV painting
Display window, lens cover	Acrylic resin
Infrared Port	ABS resin
External Display window	Acrylic resin/ In-mold decorating
Center Key, Multi Selector	PC resin, solid printing (back)
Mail Key, Yahoo! Keitai Key, Data Folder & A/a Key, Camera & Text Key, Start Key, Clear/Back Key, Power On/Off Key, Keypad, Calendar Key, Bookmarks & Manner Key, Side Key	PC resin/UV painting
Portrait/Macro Selector	POM
External Device Port Cover	PC resin/ Elastomer/UV painting
Battery terminals	Brass/Gold plating (sealer: nickel)
Screws (Display side, Keypad side, battery side)	SWCH16A/ Trivalent chromate

## Accessory

### Battery

<b>Voltage</b>	3.7V
<b>Battery Type</b>	Lithium-ion
<b>Capacity</b>	780 mAh
<b>Dimensions (W x H x D)*</b>	37.7 x 44.4 x 4.6 mm (without protruding parts)

\*Approximate value.



## Universal Operations, Etc.

## ■ Text Entry

<b>User Dictionary</b>	250 entries (5 per reading) Word: 30 characters Reading: 8 hiragana
<b>Acquire Dictionary</b>	5 dictionaries
<b>Paste List</b>	1 text string
<b>Recoverable Deleted Characters</b>	30,720 single-byte characters

## ■ Phone Book

<b>Entry</b>	1,000 entries
<b>Name/Reading</b>	Last/First: 32 characters each
<b>Phone Number</b>	5 numbers (32 digits each)
<b>Mail Address</b>	5 addresses (128 characters each)
<b>Category</b>	16 Categories
<b>Address</b>	Postal Code: 20 characters Country: 32 characters Others: 64 characters each
<b>Office</b>	Office Name/Division/Post: 32 characters each
<b>Homepage</b>	1,024 bytes
<b>Note</b>	256 characters
<b>Mail Groups</b>	20 Groups (20 members each) Group name: 16 characters

## Calling

<b>Dialed Numbers</b>	Dialed Numbers: 30 records Dialed Ranking: 10 records
<b>Received Calls</b>	30 records
<b>Answer Phone/ Caller Voice</b>	20 messages or 90 seconds
<b>Auto Answer List</b>	10 numbers
<b>Speed Dial/Mail</b>	100 numbers/addresses

## Messaging

<b>Memory</b>	Received Msg.	10 MB or 3,000 messages
	Drafts	5 MB (or 1,000 messages between Drafts, Sent Messages and Unsent Messages)
	Sent Messages	
	Unsent Messages	
	Templates	100 MB (shared with Data Folder and S! Appli Library)
<b>S! Mail Subject</b>	512 single-byte characters	
<b>S! Mail Message</b>	Approximately 30,000 single-byte characters	
<b>SMS Message</b>	160 single-byte alphanumeric	
<b>Auto Resend</b>	2 times	
<b>Attachment</b>	20 files or 300 KB <sup>*</sup>	
<b>Send Reservation</b>	10 messages	
<b>Signature</b>	256 single-byte characters	
<b>Recipient</b>	20 numbers/addresses	
<b>Folder</b>	20 folders (20 sort keys each)	
<b>Graphic Mail</b>	1 sound or Flash <sup>®</sup> file, or 40 images/ My Pictograms (with 1 sound or Flash <sup>®</sup> file)	
<b>Auto Reply</b>	20 numbers/addresses Reply Message: 256 single-byte characters per mode	
<b>Anti Spam Measures</b>	Individual	20 entries
	Permitted List	20 entries

<sup>\*</sup>Limit may be lower depending on message text, etc.

## Internet

<b>Download</b>	Yahoo! Keitai	300 KB per page
	PC Site Browser	500 KB per file
<b>History</b>	300 pages	
<b>URL Entry Log</b>	10 URLs	
<b>Bookmarks<sup>*</sup> &amp; Saved Pages</b>	100 pages	
<b>Tab</b>	3 tabs at one time	
<b>Input Memory</b>	20 entries	
<b>Streaming History</b>	20 URLs	

<sup>\*</sup>Folders are counted as pages.



## Camera &amp; Imaging

## ■ Mobile Camera

Effective Pixels	2.0 Megapixels
Auto Shut-off Time	Approximately 3 minutes

## ■ Photo Camera

<b>Zoom</b>	1x - 19.8x	
<b>Picture Size (W x H dots)</b>	2M	1200 x 1600
	Wide	900 x 1600
	1.2M	960 x 1280
	VGA	480 x 640
	Wallpaper	240 x 400
	QVGA	240 x 320
	QQVGA	120 x 160
<b>File Format</b>	JPEG	
<b>Memory</b>	Approximately 405 files (at 2M, Normal Quality) on handset with no other files	
<b>File Name</b>	yymmdd_hhmmss	
<b>Shooting Distance</b>	Macro: 10 cm	
<b>Other</b>	Use transparent PNG files of 40 KB or less as Frames	

## ■ Video Camera

Zoom	1x - 9.3x	
Record Size (W x H dots)	Extended Video	320 x 240 (QVGA)
		240 x 176 (HQVGA)
		176 x 144 (QCIF)
	For Message	128 x 96 (SubQCIF)
File Format	3GP	
Recording Capacity per Shot	Extended Video	Approximately 30 minutes* on Memory Card
	For Message	295 KB
File Name	yymmdd_hhmmss	
Recording Distance	1.5 m in good light	
Recording Pause Supported	QVGA, HQVGA (Extended Video sizes only)	

\*Varies with handset usage, location or settings.

## ■ Editing Images

Picture Editor	Resize (W x H dots)	Wallpaper (240 x 400) Power On/Off (240 x 400) Incoming Call (160 x 160) Alarm (240 x 104) Add Art (96 x 96) QVGA (240 x 320) Cut
	Retouch	52 x 52 dots or larger JPEG/PNG images
	Paste	16 characters
	Correction	52 x 52 dots or larger JPEG/PNG images
Composite	Merge Panorama	JPEG images between W 48 x H 64 dots and 240 x 320 dots

## Media Player

Supported Formats	AAC (.mp4/.3gp/.m4a) (Some files may not play depending on sampling frequency and bit rate)	
All Music List	Music	Shows up to 350 files each
	Chaku-Uta®	

## S! Applications

Memory	100 items or 100 MB (shared with Templates folder and other folders in Data Folder)
--------	---

## Handy Extras

Calendar*/Tasks	300 entries, Subject: 32 characters Description: 128 characters Location: 16 characters Set Holiday: 10 holidays	
Alarms	5 entries, Subject: 9 characters	
Calculator	999,999,999,999	
Stopwatch	23 hours 59 minutes 59.9 seconds in 0.1-second increments Lap time: 4 records	
Countdown Timer	99 minutes 59 seconds in 1-second increments	
Notepad	500 entries (8,192 characters each)	
Voice Recorder	For Message	3 minutes per file
	Extended Voice	99 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds
Scan Barcode (Continuous Mode)	UPC/JAN	50 codes
	QR Code	16 codes

\*Preset holidays are based on Japanese calendar as of January 2010.



## Entertainment

## ■ S! Quick News

Savable Items	1 item for Special
	5 items between News Flash and General

## ■ e-Books

Text Copy	20 characters
-----------	---------------

## Data Folder

Memory	100 MB (shared with Templates folder and S! Appli Library)
--------	--

## Memory Card

Backup File Name	yymmddXX" (XX: 2 digits/letters)
------------------	----------------------------------

\*yymmdd for Contents Keys.

## Connectivity &amp; File Backup

## ■ Infrared

Infrared Transfer	IrMC 1.1	
	Range	Within 20 cm

## ■ S! Addressbook Back-up

Log	10 Backup/Restore/synchronization records
-----	---

## Reference URLs

## ■ SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

<http://mb.softbank.jp/en/>

## ■ S! Addressbook Back-up

[http://mb.softbank.jp/en/price\\_plans/basic\\_option.html](http://mb.softbank.jp/en/price_plans/basic_option.html)

## ■ Messaging Basics

[http://mb.softbank.jp/en/customer\\_support/mail.html](http://mb.softbank.jp/en/customer_support/mail.html)

## ■ Custom Handset Address

<https://www.email.softbank.ne.jp/help/e/address.html>

## ■ Yahoo! Keitai

[http://mb.softbank.jp/en/customer\\_support/web.html](http://mb.softbank.jp/en/customer_support/web.html)

## ■ Secure Remote Lock

[http://mb.softbank.jp/en/price\\_plans/basic\\_option.html](http://mb.softbank.jp/en/price_plans/basic_option.html)

## ■ microSD Memory Card Compatibility

From PC (Japanese)

[http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/peripherals/sd\\_support.html](http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/peripherals/sd_support.html)

From Handset (Japanese)

<http://shweb.sharp.co.jp/>

## ■ SVG-T

From Handset (Japanese)

[http://shweb.sharp.co.jp/svg/index\\_pdc.html](http://shweb.sharp.co.jp/svg/index_pdc.html)



# Memory Card Structure & Contents

Memory Card Structure				Contents (Location when Viewed on Handset)
DCIM	XXXSHARP			Still images in DCIM
PRIVATE	MYFOLDER	Mail		Messaging folder backups (Received Msg., Sent Messages and Drafts)
		My Items	Book	e-Book files in Data Folder (Books)
			Bookmarks	Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks
			Flash(R)	Flash® Wallpaper files in Data Folder (Flash®)
			Flash(R) Ringtones	Flash® ringtones in Data Folder (Flash® Ringtones)
			Games and More	S! Applications
			Mail Art	Files in Data Folder (Mail Art)
			Message Templates	Graphic Mail templates in Templates folder
			Music	Music files in Data Folder (Music)
			Other Documents	Other files in Data Folder (Other Documents)
			Pictograms	GIF files in Data Folder (My Pictograms)
			Pictures	Still images in Data Folder (Pictures)
			Sounds & Ringtones	Melodies and other sound files in Data Folder (Ring Songs-Tones)
			Videos	Video files in Data Folder (Videos)
		SH_Folder		Application management files
		Utility		Backup files (Phone Book), etc.
	SHARP	MOBILE		Backup files (User Dictionary), etc.



# Menu List

## Messaging

Function		Refer to
Received Msg.		P.4-10
Create Message		P.4-4
Retrieve New Msg.		P.4-17
Drafts		P.4-23
Templates		P.4-16
Sent Messages		P.4-10
Unsent Messages		P.4-23
Server Mail Box	Mail List	P.4-17
	Retrieve All	P.4-18
	Delete All	P.4-21
	Mailbox Volume	P.4-23
Create New SMS		P.4-7
Settings	Address Settings	P.4-3
	General Settings	P.4-24
	S! Mail Settings	P.4-26
	SMS Settings	P.4-27
	Speed Dial/Mail	P.4-14
	Set Mail Group	P.4-13
Memory Status		P.4-20

## Settings: General Settings

	Function	Refer to
Send/ Compose	Delivery Report	P.4-24
	Reply to Settings	P.4-24
	Reply With Text	P.4-24
	Auto Reply	P.4-19
	Set Quick Reply	P.4-19
	Auto Resend	P.4-24
	Sending Status	P.4-24
Receive	Message Notice	P.4-25
	Link to Feeling	P.4-25
	Animation View	P.4-25
Anti Spam Measures		P.4-12
Report Spam		P.4-24
Scroll Unit		P.4-24
Message List View		P.4-24
Address View		P.4-24
Received Msg. View		P.4-24
Sent Msg. View		P.4-24
Auto Delete	Received Msg.	P.4-24
	Sent Messages	P.4-24

## Settings: S! Mail Settings

Function		Refer to
Message DL		P.4-26
Signature		P.4-14
Picture Appearance		P.4-26
Auto Play File	Pictures	P.4-26
	Sounds	P.4-26
Send File Settings		P.4-26

## Settings: SMS Settings

Function	Refer to
Expiry Time	P.4-27
Message Center	P.4-27
Char-code	P.4-27



## Yahoo!

Function	Refer to
Yahoo! Keitai	P.5-3
Menu List	P.5-3
Bookmarks	P.5-7
Saved Pages	P.5-7
Web Search	P.5-9
Enter URL	P.5-3
History	P.5-3
PC Site Browser	P.5-4
Browser Settings	P.5-10

## PC Site Browser

Function	Refer to
Homepage	P.5-4
Bookmarks	P.5-7
Saved Pages	P.5-7
Web Search	P.5-9
Enter URL	P.5-4
History	P.5-4
Yahoo! Keitai	P.5-3

PC Site  
Browser  
Settings

Font Size	P.5-10
Scroll Settings	P.5-10
Cursor Settings	P.5-10
Downloads	P.5-10
Memory Operation	P.5-8
Security Settings	P.5-13
Download to	P.5-10
Initialized Browser	P.5-13
Reset Settings	P.5-13
Warning Message	P.5-10
Zoom Factor	P.5-10
Softkey Area	P.5-4

## Browser Settings

Function	Refer to
Font Size	P.5-10
Scroll Unit	P.5-10
Cursor Settings	P.5-10
Downloads	P.5-10
Memory Operation	P.5-8
Security Settings	P.5-13
Download to	P.5-10
Initialized Browser	P.5-13
Reset Settings	P.5-13

## S! Appli

Function	Refer to
S! Appli Library	P.7-7
Settings	P.7-11
Information	P.7-11

## Settings

Function	Refer to
Application Volume	P.7-10
Backlight	P.7-11
Vibration	P.7-11
Synchronization	P.7-11
Calls & Alarms	P.7-10
Screensaver	Switch On/Off P.7-10
	Activation Time P.7-10
	Stop Auto Start P.7-10
Surround	P.7-10
Set to Default	P.7-11
Memory All Clear	P.7-11

## Entertainment

Function	Refer to
S! Information Channel/ Weather	What's New P.9-2
	Back Issue P.9-2
	Registration/Cancel P.9-2
	Get Latest Contents P.9-6
	Notification P.9-6
	Weather Indicator P.9-2
S! Quick News	P.9-3
Free Contents	P.9-4
S! Contents Store	P.9-4
BookSurfing	P.9-5
e-Book Viewer	P.9-5

S! Information Channel/Weather:  
Weather Indicator

Function	Refer to
Weather	P.9-6
Manual Update	P.9-2
Settings	Standby Setting P.9-6
	Weather Notif. P.9-6
	Icon Update P.9-6

## S! Quick News

Function	Refer to
S! Quick News List	P.9-3
Settings	Automatic Update P.9-7
	Show Image P.9-7
	Check Schedule P.9-7
	Change Skin P.9-7
	Delete S! Quick News Lists P.9-7



## Camera

Function	Refer to
Photo Camera	P.6-4
Video Camera	P.6-5
Scan Barcode	P.8-14

## ■ Photo Camera

Function	Refer to
Shooting Settings	Exposure P.6-12
	White Balance P.6-12
Modes	Add Frame P.6-7
	Continuous Shoot P.6-6
	Camera Effects P.6-7
Barcode	P.8-14
Data Folder	P.6-12
Picture Size	P.6-12
Scene	P.6-12
Picture Quality	P.6-12
Self-timer	P.6-6
Settings	P.6-12
Help	P.6-12

## ■ Video Camera

Function	Refer to
Record Settings	Exposure P.6-12
Display Size	P.6-13
Data Folder	P.6-12
Record Time/Size	P.6-13
Microphone	P.6-13
Video	P.6-12
Self-timer	P.6-6
Settings	P.6-12
Help	P.6-12

## Media

Function	Refer to
Music	P.7-4
Videos	P.7-5
Streaming	P.5-11

## ■ Music

Function	Refer to
Last Played Music	P.7-8
My Music	P.7-6
Download Music	P.7-3
Settings	Sound P.7-8
	Playback P.7-8

## ■ Videos

Function	Refer to
Last Played Video	P.7-8
My Videos	P.7-5
Download Videos	P.7-3
Settings	Playback Mode P.7-8
	Backlight P.7-8
	Display Size P.7-8
	Sound Effects P.7-8
	Web Link Setting P.7-8

## Tools

Function	Refer to
Alarms	P.8-7
Stopwatch	P.8-9
Countdown Timer	P.8-10
Calculator	P.8-11
Tasks	P.8-5
Notepad	P.8-12
Voice Recorder	Record Time P.8-19
	Ring Songs-Tones P.8-13
	Save Recording to P.8-19
Barcode/Scan	Scan Barcode P.8-14
	Open Barcode P.8-20
	Scanned Results P.8-20

## Data Folder

Function	Refer to
Pictures	P.6-8
DCIM	P.11-2
Ring Songs-Tones	P.8-13
S! Appli	P.7-7
Music	P.11-2
Videos	P.11-2
Books	P.11-2
Flash@	P.11-2
Other Documents	P.11-2
Memory Status	P.11-2

## Calendar

Function	Refer to
Calendar	P.8-2



## Connectivity

	Function	Refer to
Infrared	Switch On/Off	P.12-11
	Send All	P.12-4
Mass Storage		P.12-5
USB Charge		P.1-18
Memory Card	Format Card	P.11-6
	Memory Status	P.11-2
Backup/ Restore	Backup All Items	P.12-11
	Backup Selected Items	P.12-7
	Restore All Items	P.12-11
	Restore Selected Items	P.12-7
	Settings/Manage	P.12-11

## Phone

	Function	Refer to
Phone Book		P.2-12
Add New Entry		P.2-12
Information		P.1-18
Call Log		P.3-7
Play Messages		P.3-4
Call Voicemail		P.3-10
S! Addressbook Back-up		P.12-8
My Details		P.1-17
Set Category		P.2-13
Mail Groups		P.4-13
Speed Dial/Mail		P.3-6
Ph.Book Settings	Sort Entries	P.2-14
	Select Phone Book	P.2-17
	Save New Entry	P.2-17
	New Number Prompt	P.2-16
	View Settings	P.2-16
Call Log Settings		P.3-13
Manage Entries	Copy All	P.2-17
	Memory Status	P.2-17
	Delete All	P.2-17

## Settings

## ■ Sound/Display

Function	Refer to
Mode Settings	P.1-18
Display	P.13-3
Customized Screen	P.2-4
Sounds & Alerts	P.2-5
Date & Time	P.13-2
言語選択 (Language)	P.13-3
Ringer Output	P.13-5
Earpiece Volume	P.3-12
Change Menu	P.1-14



## ■ Sound/Display: Display

Function		Refer to
Wallpaper		P.2-3
System Graphics		P.13-3
VeilView		P.1-18
Font Settings		P.2-2
Standby Display	Clock/Calendar	P.13-4
	Standby Window	P.13-4
	Show Operator Name	P.13-4
Greeting Message		P.13-3
External Display	Duration	P.13-4
	Messages	P.13-4
	Display Date&Time	P.13-4
	Clock Type	P.13-4
	Caller Display	P.13-4
Backlight		P.13-3
Display Saving		P.13-3
Dial Number		P.13-3

## ■ Sound/Display: Sounds & Alerts

Function	Refer to
Volume	P.13-5
Ringtone/videos	P.2-5
System Sounds	P.13-5
Vibration	P.2-5
Event Light	P.13-5
Status Light	P.13-5
Any Key Answer	P.13-5
Surround	P.13-5

## ■ Sound/Display: Date & Time

Function	Refer to
Set Date/Time	P.13-2
Time Correction	P.13-2
Clock/Calendar	P.13-4
Alarms	P.8-7
Set Holiday	P.8-15
Time Format	P.13-2
Date Format	P.13-2
Calendar Format	P.13-2

## ■ Phone/☎: Memory Card

Function		Refer to
User Dictionary		P.2-11
Set Key Shortcut		P.1-13
Set Key Light		P.13-4
Memory Card	Format Card	P.11-6
	Memory Status	P.11-2
Backup/ Restore	Backup All Items	P.12-11
	Backup Selected Items	P.12-7
	Restore All Items	P.12-11
	Restore Selected Items	P.12-7
	Settings/Manage	P.12-11
Locks		P.10-2
Software Update		P.14-5
Master Reset	Reset Settings	P.13-7
	Reset All	P.13-7

## ■ Phone/☎: Locks

Function	Refer to
PIN Entry	P.10-2
Function Lock	P.10-2
Function Control	P.10-4
Application Lock	P.10-3
History Lock	P.10-3
Show Secret Data	P.10-3
Set Lock Message	P.10-5
Chg. Handset Code	P.1-16



## ■ Call

	Function	Refer to
Call Time/ Data Counter	Call Timers	P.3-8
	Data Counter	P.3-14
	Call Time Counter	P.3-14
	Minute Minder	P.3-14
Answer Phone	Switch On/Off	P.3-4
	Answer Time	P.3-11
	Outgoing Message	P.3-11
	Volume	P.3-11
Voicemail/ Divert	Voicemail	P.3-10
	Diverts	P.3-9
	Cancel All	P.3-10
	Status	P.3-14
Video Call	Camera Picture	P.3-16
	Incoming Picture	P.3-16
	Outgoing Picture	P.3-16
	Hold Guidance Pict	P.3-16
	Backlight	P.3-16
	Loudspeaker	P.3-16
	Mute Microphone	P.3-16
	Remote Monitor	P.3-11
Show My Number		P.3-16
[out] Missed Calls		P.3-10
Int'l Calling		P.3-12
Call Barring	Bar Outgoing Calls	P.3-15
	Bar Incoming Calls	P.3-16
	Reject Numbers	P.3-15
	Change NW Password	P.3-15
Auto Answer		P.3-16
Call Waiting		P.3-14

## ■ Network

Function	Refer to
Offline Mode	P.1-15
Retrieve NW Info	P.13-6
Location Info	P.13-6
Network Info	P.13-6
External Device	P.13-6



# Index

## A

AC Charger .....	1-4
Accessing Functions .....	1-11
Accessory .....	v
After-Sales Services .....	14-35
Alarms .....	8-7
Canceling .....	8-8
Deleting .....	8-8
Editing entries .....	8-18
For Manner Mode .....	8-18
Animation View .....	4-8
Answer Phone .....	3-4, 3-11
Anti Spam Measures .....	4-12, 4-22
Any Key Answer .....	13-5
Application Lock .....	10-3
Auto Reply .....	4-9, 4-19
Auto Resend .....	4-2, 4-24
Auto Retry Function .....	4-2

## B

Backlight .....	13-3
Backup .....	12-6
Settings/Manage .....	12-11
Battery .....	1-4, 14-4
Battery Cover .....	1-2
Bookmarks .....	5-7
BookSurfing® .....	9-5

## C

Calculator .....	8-11, 8-18
Calendar .....	8-2
Calendar Settings .....	8-15
Editing schedules .....	8-16
Call Barring .....	3-9, 3-15
Call Barring (Incoming Calls) .....	3-16
Call Barring (Outgoing Calls) .....	3-15

Call Forwarding .....	3-9
Call Log .....	3-7, 3-13
Call Time .....	3-8
Call Time Counter .....	3-14
Call Waiting .....	3-9, 3-14
Call Waiting (answering Line 2) .....	3-14
Caller ID .....	3-9, 3-16
Camera .....	1-2, 6-2
Auto Save .....	6-12
Capturing Still Images .....	6-4
Data Folder .....	6-12
Exposure .....	6-12
Macro .....	6-12
Picture Quality .....	6-12
Recording Video .....	6-5
Save Pictures to .....	6-12
Save Videos to .....	6-12
Self-timer .....	6-6
Send .....	6-4, 6-5
Video (quality) .....	6-12
Center Access Code .....	1-16
Change NW Password .....	3-15
Change PIN .....	10-5
Character Code List .....	14-11
Charging .....	1-4
Clock/Calendar .....	13-4
Composite .....	6-11
Countdown Timer .....	8-10
Customer Service .....	14-36
Customized Screen (Japanese) .....	2-4

## D

Data Folder .....	11-2
Files (attaching) .....	4-5, 11-3
Files (moving/copying) .....	11-4
Files (opening) .....	11-3
Files (renaming) .....	11-8
Folders (adding) .....	11-4

Selecting Multiple Files .....	11-4
Set Secret (folders) .....	11-4
Slide Show .....	11-3
Date & Time .....	13-2
Delivery Report .....	4-8, 4-15, 4-24
Dialing from Call Log records .....	3-13
Display .....	1-2, 1-7
Display (settings) .....	13-3
Display Light .....	1-17
Download Dictionary .....	2-11

## E

Earpiece .....	1-2
Earpiece Volume .....	3-12
e-Book Library .....	9-8
e-Book Viewer .....	9-5
e-Books (Japanese) .....	9-5, 9-8
Emergency Calls .....	3-2
English .....	13-3
Event Light .....	13-5
External Device Port .....	1-2
External Display .....	1-2, 1-10, 13-4

## F

Face Arrange .....	6-10
Feeling Mail (receiving) .....	4-8
Feeling Mail (sending) .....	4-5
Font Size .....	2-2
Format Card .....	11-6
Function Control .....	10-4
Function Lock .....	10-2

## G

General Notes .....	xii
Graphic Mail .....	4-6
Group Calling .....	3-9, 3-14
Group Calling (opening another line) .....	3-14



Guide Usage Notes .....	ii
<b>H</b>	
Handset Closed .....	1-2
Handset Code .....	1-16
Handset Keys .....	1-3
Handset mail address .....	4-3
Handset Open .....	1-2
Handset Parts .....	1-2
Handset Positions .....	1-2
Handset Power On/Off .....	1-6
Handset responses .....	2-5
Headphones (answering calls) .....	3-11
History Lock .....	10-3
Hold .....	3-11
<b>I</b>	
Indicators .....	1-8
Camera (Viewfinder) .....	6-3
Display .....	1-8
External Display .....	1-10
Messaging (message list) .....	4-9
Music Playback Window .....	7-4
Video Playback Window .....	7-5
Information window .....	1-7
Infrared .....	12-2
Receiving files .....	12-3
Sending files .....	12-4, 12-11
Infrared Port .....	1-2
Internal Antenna .....	1-2
International calls .....	3-3
Internet .....	5-2
Accessing .....	5-3, 5-4
Basic Operations .....	5-5
Browser Settings .....	5-10
Enter URL .....	5-3, 5-4
History .....	5-3, 5-4
Saving Bookmarks/pages .....	5-7

## K

Key Assignments .....	14-8
Keypad Lock .....	1-17

## L

Language .....	13-3
Large Font Menu .....	2-2
Link to Feeling .....	4-25
Locks .....	1-16, 10-2
Loudspeaker .....	3-12, 3-16

## M

Mail Groups .....	4-13
Changing members .....	4-22
Deleting .....	4-22
Edit Name .....	4-22
Main Menu .....	1-11
Manner mode .....	1-15
Mass Storage .....	12-5
Master Reset .....	13-7
Format Card .....	11-6
Reset All .....	13-7
Reset Settings .....	13-7
Media Player .....	7-2
Playlists .....	7-6, 7-9
Memory All Clear (S! Applications) .....	7-11
Memory Card .....	11-5
Format Card .....	11-6
Opening files .....	11-6
Memory Card Structure & Contents .....	14-22
Menu List .....	14-23
Calendar .....	14-25
Camera .....	14-25
Connectivity .....	14-26
Data Folder .....	14-25
Entertainment .....	14-24
Media .....	14-25
Messaging .....	14-23
Phone .....	14-26

S! Appli .....	14-24
Settings .....	14-26
Tools .....	14-25
Yahoo! .....	14-24
Message List View .....	4-24
Message Notice .....	4-25
Messages (creating/sending) .....	4-4, 4-7
Attachments .....	4-16
Graphic Mail .....	4-16
Inserting signature manually .....	4-14
Messaging Settings .....	4-15
Preview Message .....	4-4
Recipient status .....	4-14
Recipients (editing) .....	4-14
Save to Drafts .....	4-15
Send Reservation .....	4-15
Sending from Drafts .....	4-23
Sending unsent messages .....	4-23
Set Auto Play File .....	4-16
Set Sent Cancel .....	4-15
Signature .....	4-14
Speed Dial/Mail .....	4-14
Templates .....	4-16
Using sent messages .....	4-23
Messages (deleting) .....	4-20
Auto Delete .....	4-24
Messages (forwarding) .....	4-23
Messages (protecting) .....	4-10
Messages (receiving/checking) .....	4-8
Accessing new mail out of Standby .....	4-17
Mail List .....	4-17
Message List .....	4-9, 4-20
Message Window .....	4-9, 4-18
Retrieving complete S! Mail messages manually .....	4-26
Save to Data Folder .....	4-18
Messages (sorting) .....	4-12
Anti Spam Measures .....	4-12, 4-22
Messaging (→ SMS, S! Mail) .....	4-2
General Settings .....	4-24



Receive (settings) .....	4-25
S! Mail Settings .....	4-26
Send/Compose (settings) .....	4-24
SMS Settings .....	4-27
<b>Microphone</b> .....	1-2
<b>Minute Minder</b> .....	3-14
<b>Missed Call Notification</b> .....	3-10
<b>Mode Settings</b> .....	1-18
<b>Music (deleting)</b> .....	7-9
<b>Music (downloading)</b> .....	7-3
<b>Music (playing)</b> .....	7-4, 7-8
<b>My Details</b> .....	1-17
Sending via Infrared .....	12-11

## N

<b>Network Password</b> .....	1-16
<b>Notepad</b> .....	8-12
Edit Text .....	8-19
Change Category .....	8-19

## O

<b>Offline Mode</b> .....	1-15
<b>Optional Services</b> .....	3-9
<b>Optional Services (checking status)</b> .....	3-14

## P

<b>Pager Code List</b> .....	14-10
<b>PC (connecting handset)</b> .....	12-5
<b>PC Site Browser</b> .....	5-4
<b>Phone Book (deleting)</b> .....	2-17
<b>Phone Book (editing)</b> .....	2-16
<b>Phone Book (saving)</b> .....	2-12
<b>Phone Book (using)</b> .....	2-14
<b>Phone Book search</b> .....	2-14
<b>Picture Editor</b> .....	6-8
<b>PIN</b> .....	14-2
<b>PIN Entry</b> .....	10-2
<b>Playlists</b> .....	7-6, 7-9

## Q

<b>Quick Operations</b> .....	1-11
-------------------------------	------

## R

<b>Received Msg. View</b> .....	4-24
<b>Record Caller Voice</b> .....	3-13
<b>Reference URLs</b> .....	14-21
<b>Reject (calls)</b> .....	3-11
<b>Remote Monitor</b> .....	3-11
<b>Reply</b> .....	4-9, 4-19
Auto Reply .....	4-19
Set Quick Reply .....	4-19
<b>Reset (→ Master Reset)</b> .....	13-7
<b>Reset All</b> .....	13-7
<b>Reset Settings</b> .....	13-7
<b>Retrieve NW Info</b> .....	13-6
<b>Retrieving Network Information</b> .....	1-6

## S

<b>S! Addressbook Back-up</b> .....	12-8
Confirming password .....	12-11
Set Auto Sync .....	12-11
Sync History .....	12-11
<b>S! Applications</b> .....	7-7
<b>S! Information Channel (Japanese) ...</b> .....	9-2, 9-6
Weather Indicator .....	9-2
<b>S! Mail</b> .....	4-2
Attaching Files .....	4-5
Feeling Mail .....	4-5
Graphic Mail .....	4-6
S! Mail Settings .....	4-26
<b>S! Mail (sending)</b> .....	4-4
<b>S! Quick News (Japanese)</b> .....	9-3
Automatic Update .....	9-7
Deleting items .....	9-7
<b>Safety Precautions</b> .....	vi
<b>SAR</b> .....	xvii
<b>Saved Pages</b> .....	5-7, 5-12
<b>Scan Barcode</b> .....	8-14

Open Barcode .....	8-20
Scanning during text entry .....	8-20
Using scan results .....	8-20
<b>Schedules (→ Calendar)</b> .....	8-2
<b>Security Codes</b> .....	1-16
<b>Sent Msg. View</b> .....	4-24
<b>Set as Wallpaper</b> .....	11-7
<b>Set Date/Time</b> .....	13-2
<b>Set Key Light</b> .....	13-4
<b>Set Key Shortcut</b> .....	1-13
<b>Set Quick Reply</b> .....	4-19
<b>Set Sent Cancel</b> .....	4-15
<b>Set to Default (S! Applications)</b> .....	7-11
<b>Show My Number</b> .....	3-16
<b>Show Secret Data</b> .....	10-3
<b>Side Key</b> .....	1-3
<b>Signature</b> .....	4-14
<b>Simple Menu</b> .....	1-14
<b>Slide W paper</b> .....	2-3
<b>Small Light</b> .....	1-2
<b>SMS</b> .....	4-2
SMS Settings .....	4-27
<b>SMS (sending)</b> .....	4-7
<b>Snooze</b> .....	8-7, 8-8
<b>Softkeys</b> .....	1-7
<b>Software Update</b> .....	14-5
<b>Sounds &amp; Alerts</b> .....	2-5, 13-5
<b>Speaker</b> .....	1-2
<b>Specifications</b> .....	14-18
<b>Specifications (by function)</b> .....	14-19
Calling .....	14-19
Camera & Imaging .....	14-20
Connectivity & File Backup .....	14-21
Data Folder .....	14-21
Entertainment .....	14-21
Handy Extras .....	14-20
Internet .....	14-19
Media Player .....	14-20
Memory Card .....	14-21
Messaging .....	14-19



SI Applications.....	14-20
Universal Operations, Etc.....	14-19
<b>Speed Dial/Mail.....</b>	<b>3-6, 4-14</b>
<b>Standby .....</b>	<b>1-6</b>
<b>Standby Window .....</b>	<b>9-3</b>
<b>Still images (capturing) .....</b>	<b>6-4</b>
Add Frame .....	6-7
Camera Effects .....	6-7
Continuous Shoot .....	6-6
Picture Size .....	6-12
Scene .....	6-12
ShutterSound .....	6-12
White Balance .....	6-12
<b>Still images (capturing &amp; sending).....</b>	<b>6-4</b>
<b>Still images (editing).....</b>	<b>6-8</b>
Additional editing options .....	6-13
Changing sizes .....	6-9
Face Arrange .....	6-10
Merge Panorama.....	6-11
<b>Stopwatch.....</b>	<b>8-9</b>
<b>Strap Eyelet.....</b>	<b>1-2</b>
<b>Streaming .....</b>	<b>5-3, 5-11</b>
<b>Swap Calls .....</b>	<b>3-14</b>
<b>System Graphics.....</b>	<b>13-3</b>
<b>System Sounds .....</b>	<b>13-5</b>

## T

<b>Table of Contents.....</b>	<b>iii</b>
<b>Tasks .....</b>	<b>8-5</b>
Deleting Tasks .....	8-6
Editing tasks .....	8-17
Opening Tasks .....	8-6
<b>Text (editing).....</b>	<b>2-10</b>
<b>Text Entry.....</b>	<b>2-6</b>
Emoticons.....	2-8
Hiragana .....	2-7
Hiragana to Katakana/Alphanumeric .....	2-9
Conversion .....	2-15
Input/Conversion .....	2-15
Inserting line breaks .....	2-15

Inserting Phone Book entry items .....	2-15
Inserting spaces .....	2-15
Katakana .....	2-8
Mail & Web Extensions .....	2-9
One-Hiragana Conversion .....	2-8
Phonetic Conversion .....	2-7
Pictograms & Symbols .....	2-8
Quick Conversion .....	2-9
Reset Log .....	2-15
Switching Entry Modes.....	2-6
Undo conversion or recover deleted characters .....	2-15
Using Character Codes .....	2-15
Using Pager Code .....	2-15
When Target Word is Not Listed .....	2-7
<b>Time Correction.....</b>	<b>13-2</b>
<b>Troubleshooting .....</b>	<b>14-6</b>

## U

<b>USB Charge.....</b>	<b>1-4, 1-18</b>
<b>User Dictionary.....</b>	<b>2-11</b>
Deleting entries .....	2-15
<b>USIM Card.....</b>	<b>14-2</b>
<b>USIM PIN (→ PIN).....</b>	<b>14-2</b>
<b>Utility Software.....</b>	<b>12-5</b>

## V

<b>VeilView .....</b>	<b>1-17</b>
<b>Vibration.....</b>	<b>2-5</b>
<b>Video (deleting).....</b>	<b>7-9</b>
<b>Video (downloading).....</b>	<b>7-3</b>
<b>Video (playing).....</b>	<b>7-5, 7-8</b>
<b>Video (recording) .....</b>	<b>6-5</b>
Display Size .....	6-13
Microphone .....	6-13
Record Time/Size .....	6-13
<b>Video (recording &amp; sending).....</b>	<b>6-5</b>
<b>Video Calling .....</b>	<b>3-5</b>
Remote Monitor .....	3-11
<b>Video Calls (answering).....</b>	<b>3-5</b>

<b>Video Calls (placing).....</b>	<b>3-5</b>
<b>Voice Calling .....</b>	<b>3-3</b>
<b>Voice Calls (answering) .....</b>	<b>3-3</b>
<b>Voice Calls (placing) .....</b>	<b>3-3</b>
<b>Voice Recorder .....</b>	<b>8-13</b>
Record Time.....	8-19
Save and Send .....	8-19
Save Recording to .....	8-19
<b>Voicemail.....</b>	<b>3-9</b>
<b>Volume (ringtones).....</b>	<b>13-5</b>

## W

<b>Wallpaper .....</b>	<b>2-3</b>
Slide W paper .....	2-3
<b>Warranty.....</b>	<b>14-35</b>
<b>Weather Indicator.....</b>	<b>9-2</b>
Icon Update .....	9-6
Manual Update .....	9-2
Weather .....	9-6
<b>Weather Indicator List.....</b>	<b>14-17</b>

## Y

<b>Yahoo! Keitai.....</b>	<b>5-3</b>
---------------------------	------------

## Objectives

<b>Accessing Secret Files/Entries</b>	
Data Folder .....	11-4
Messaging folders.....	4-11
Phone Book .....	2-13
Schedules/tasks .....	8-4
<b>Accessing the Internet</b>	
From message text .....	4-19
From scan results .....	8-20
Media Player.....	7-3
PC Site Browser .....	5-4
Yahoo! Keitai.....	5-3
<b>Browsing/Viewing</b>	
e-Books .....	9-5
PC Site Browser .....	5-4
SI! Information Channel.....	9-2



- S! Quick News.....9-3  
 Yahoo! Keitai .....5-3
- Canceling**  
 Alarm.....8-8  
 Answer Phone.....3-4  
 Call Forwarding.....3-10  
 Customized Screen.....2-5  
 Download Dictionary.....2-11  
 Function Lock.....10-2  
 Keypad Lock.....1-17  
 Large Font Menu.....2-2  
 Manner mode.....1-15  
 Offline Mode.....1-15  
 S! Information Channel.....9-2  
 Secret folders.....4-21, 11-4  
 Simple Menu.....1-14  
 Speed Dial entries.....3-6  
 Voicemail.....3-10
- Changing**  
 Font Size.....2-2  
 Font Weight.....2-2  
 Handset Code.....1-16  
 Handset mail address.....4-3  
 Network Password.....3-15  
 PIN.....10-5
- Changing Ringtones**  
 Phone Book.....2-13  
 Ringtone/videos.....2-5  
 Via Data Folder.....11-7
- Composing/Sending Messages**  
 Feeling Mail.....4-5  
 From Call Log records.....3-13  
 From Internet pages.....5-9  
 From message text.....4-19  
 From Phone Book.....2-17  
 From received messages.....4-9  
 From scan results.....8-20  
 From sent messages.....4-23  
 Graphic Mail.....4-6, 4-16  
 S! Mail.....4-4
- SMS.....4-7
- Copying**  
 Calculation results.....8-18  
 Data Folder files.....11-4  
 From text entry window.....2-10  
 Scan results.....8-21  
 Text (e-Books).....9-8  
 Text (Internet pages).....5-9  
 Text (Messaging).....4-19  
 Text (S! Information Channel pages).....9-6
- Downloading**  
 e-Books.....9-5  
 Music.....7-3  
 S! Applications.....7-10  
 Video.....7-3
- Exchanging Files**  
 Infrared.....12-2  
 Mass Storage.....12-5
- Hiding Files/Entries**  
 Data Folder.....11-4  
 Messaging folders.....4-11  
 Phone Book.....2-13  
 Schedules/tasks.....8-15, 8-17
- Inserting/Removing**  
 Battery.....14-4  
 Memory Card.....11-5  
 USIM Card.....14-3
- Locking/Restricting**  
 Application Lock.....10-3  
 Call Log.....10-3  
 Function Lock.....10-2  
 Incoming/outgoing calls.....3-15, 3-16  
 Keypad Lock.....1-17  
 Mail records.....10-3  
 PIN Entry.....10-2
- Managing Schedules**  
 Calendar.....8-2  
 Tasks.....8-5
- Measuring Time**  
 Countdown Timer.....8-10
- Stopwatch.....8-9
- Notifying Phone Number**  
 Opening My Details.....1-17  
 Via Infrared.....12-11
- Placing Calls**  
 By entering phone numbers.....3-3  
 From Call Log records.....3-13  
 From Internet pages.....5-9  
 From message text.....4-19  
 From Phone Book.....2-14  
 From scan results.....8-20  
 International calls.....3-3  
 Speed Dial.....3-6  
 Video Calls.....3-5
- Playing**  
 Answer Phone messages/Caller Voice ....3-4  
 Files (Scan Barcode).....8-21  
 Music.....7-4  
 Streams.....5-11  
 Video.....7-5  
 Voice files.....8-13  
 Voicemail messages.....3-10
- Rejecting**  
 Calls from public phones.....3-15  
 Calls from specified numbers.....3-15  
 Calls from unsaved numbers.....3-15  
 Undisplayable Caller ID.....3-15  
 Withheld Caller ID.....3-15
- Resetting/Formatting**  
 All settings.....13-7  
 Handset.....13-7  
 Memory Card.....11-6
- Saving**  
 Backup.....12-7  
 Captured still images.....6-4, 6-6, 6-7  
 Draft messages.....4-15  
 Edited still images.....6-8  
 Files (Internet).....5-9  
 Files (S! Information Channel pages).....9-6  
 Graphic Mail templates.....4-6



Mail attachments .....	4-18
Notepad entries .....	8-12
Phone Book entries .....	2-12
Recorded video .....	6-5
Scan results .....	8-20

### **Saving Phone Book Entries**

Add New Entry .....	2-12
Data Folder files .....	11-7
During a call .....	3-12
From Call Log records .....	3-13
From message text .....	4-18
From received messages .....	4-18
From scan results .....	8-20

### **Searching**

Messages .....	4-11
Music to download .....	7-3
Music to play .....	7-4
Notepad entries .....	8-19
Phone Book .....	2-14
Text (Internet pages) .....	5-9
Video to download .....	7-3
Video to play .....	7-5

### **Sending via Mail**

Data Folder files .....	4-5, 11-3
Notepad entries .....	8-19
Scan results .....	8-21
Still images .....	6-4
URLs .....	5-9, 5-11
Video .....	6-5
Voice files .....	8-19

### **Setting Wallpaper**

From attached files .....	4-18
From scan results .....	8-21
From Sound/Display menu .....	2-3
Via Data Folder .....	11-7

### **Showing in Standby**

Clock/Calendar .....	13-4
S! Applications .....	7-10
Standby Window .....	9-3
Wallpaper .....	2-3

### **Using Away from Home**

Alarm .....	8-7
Camera .....	6-2
Voice Recorder .....	8-13



## Warranty & Service

### ■ Warranty

Warranty is provided when you purchase handset.

- Check the name of distributor and date of purchase.
- Read contents and keep in a safe place.
- The warranty term is described in the warranty.

### ■ After-Sales Services

See **P.14-6** "Troubleshooting" before contacting SoftBank Mobile for service or repairs.

If you cannot find solutions or solve problems, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance (**P.14-36**) in your subscription area and provide a detailed description of the problem.

- Repairs within warranty are performed under terms and conditions described.
- Out of warranty, possible repairs are performed upon request at subscriber expense.

For other services, contact the distributor, the nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (**P.14-36**).

Replacement parts are available for 6 years after termination of production.

- SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any damages resulting from use of this product.
- SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of handset data. Keep a copy of Phone Book entries, etc. in a separate place.
- Disassembling or modifying handset may violate the Radio Law. Modified handset will not be repaired.



## Customer Service

For SoftBank handset or service information, call General Information. For repairs, call Customer Assistance.

### SoftBank Mobile Customer Center

From a SoftBank handset, dial toll free at **157**  
for General Information or **113** for Customer Assistance

### SoftBank Mobile Global Call Center

From outside Japan, dial **+81-3-5351-3491**  
(International charges apply.)

Call these numbers toll free from landlines.

Subscription Area	Service Center	Phone Number
Hokkaido, Aomori, Akita, Iwate, Yamagata, Miyagi, Fukushima, Niigata, Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba, Saitama, Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gunma, Yamanashi, Nagano, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui	General Information	☎0088-240-157
	Customer Assistance	☎0088-240-113
Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka	General Information	☎0088-241-157
	Customer Assistance	☎0088-241-113
Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama	General Information	☎0088-242-157
	Customer Assistance	☎0088-242-113
Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane, Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi, Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa	General Information	☎0088-250-157
	Customer Assistance	☎0088-250-113



# SoftBank 840SH User Guide

March 2010, First Edition

**SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.**

For additional information, please visit a SoftBank Shop.

**Model: SoftBank 840SH**

**Manufacturer: SHARP CORPORATION**



モバイル・リサイクル・ネットワーク  
携帯電話・PHSのリサイクルに協力をお願いします。

**Please help the mobile industry maintain high environmental standards. Recycle your old handsets, batteries and charger units (all manufacturers and brands). Before you recycle, please remember these important points:**

- Handsets, batteries and chargers submitted for recycling cannot be returned.
- Always erase all data recorded on old handsets (Phone Book entries, call records, mail, etc.) before recycling.



Mind your mobile manners when carrying a handset.